

# FORD **GALAXY** / **S-MAX** Owner's Manual





The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2020

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3646en 202011 20201130102729



# Table of Contents

---

## Introduction

Acknowledgments .....	9
About This Manual .....	9
Symbols Glossary .....	9
REACH .....	11
Replacement Parts Recommendation .....	12
Mobile Communications Equipment .....	12

## Data Privacy

Data Privacy .....	14
Service Data .....	15
Event Data .....	15
Settings Data .....	16
Connected Vehicle Data - Vehicles With: Modem .....	16
Mobile Device Data - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	16
Emergency Call System Data - Vehicles With: eCall .....	17

## Environment

Protecting the Environment .....	18
----------------------------------	----

## At a Glance

Instrument Panel - LHD .....	19
Instrument Panel - RHD .....	20

## Child Safety

Installing Child Restraints .....	22
Child Restraint Positioning .....	26
Child Safety Locks .....	30

## Seatbelts

Fastening the Seatbelts .....	31
Seatbelt Height Adjustment .....	32
Seatbelt Reminder .....	33

## Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation .....	34
Driver Airbag .....	34
Passenger Airbag .....	35
Side Airbags .....	36
Driver Knee Airbag .....	37
Side Curtain Airbags .....	37

## Pedestrian Alert System - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System .....	39
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting .....	39

## Automatic Crash Notification System

eCall .....	40
Emergency Assistance .....	42

## Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies .....	45
Remote Control .....	45
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....	50
Passive Key Backup Position .....	50

## MyKey™

Principle of Operation .....	51
MyKey Settings .....	51
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start .....	52
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....	52
Programming a MyKey .....	52
Clearing All MyKeys .....	54
Checking MyKey System Status .....	55

# Table of Contents

Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems .....	55
MyKey – Troubleshooting - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start .....	55
MyKey – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....	56

## Doors and Locks

Locking and Unlocking .....	57
Keyless Entry .....	59

## Liftgate

Manual Liftgate .....	62
Power Liftgate .....	63

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System .....	66
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery .....	66
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor .....	67
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm .....	69

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Manual Adjustable Steering Column .....	70
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Power Adjustable Steering Column .....	70
Heated Steering Wheel .....	71

## Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers .....	73
Autowipers .....	73
Windshield Washers .....	75
Rear Window Wiper and Washers .....	76
Headlamp Washers .....	76

## Lighting

General Information .....	78
---------------------------	----

Lighting Control .....	78
Autolamps .....	79
Instrument Lighting Dimmer .....	80
Headlamp Exit Delay .....	80
Automatic High Beam Control .....	80
Glare-Free High Beam .....	81
Front Fog Lamps .....	84
Rear Fog Lamps .....	84
Headlamp Leveling .....	84
Adaptive Headlamps .....	85
Cornering Lamps .....	86
Direction Indicators .....	86
Interior Lamps .....	87
Ambient Lighting .....	87

## Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows .....	88
Global Opening and Closing .....	89
Exterior Mirrors .....	90
Interior Mirror .....	92
Childminder Mirror .....	92
Sun Visors .....	93
Sun Shades - Vehicles With: Panoramic Roof Panel .....	93
Moonroof - Vehicles With: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel .....	95

## Instrument Cluster

Gauges - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	96
Gauges - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	99
Warning Lamps and Indicators .....	101
Audible Warnings and Indicators .....	105

## Information Displays

General Information - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	106
General Information - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	109
Information Messages .....	111

# Table of Contents

## Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

What Is Remote Start .....	126
Remote Start Limitations .....	126
Enabling Remote Start .....	126
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle .....	126
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel .....	126
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel .....	127

## Climate Control

Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Sony Audio System .....	128
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD .....	130
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD .....	132
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate .....	134
Rear Passenger Climate Controls .....	136
Heated Windows and Mirrors .....	136
Heated Windshield .....	137
Auxiliary Heater .....	137

## Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position .....	141
Head Restraints .....	141
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 4-Way Manual Seat .....	143
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 8-Way Manual Seat .....	143
Power Seats .....	145
Memory Function .....	147
Rear Seats .....	149
Heated Seats .....	156
Climate Controlled Seats .....	156

## Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System .....	158
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work .....	158
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions .....	158
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations .....	158
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off .....	158
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators .....	159
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings .....	159

## Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points .....	160
------------------------------	-----

## Storage Compartments

Cup Holders .....	162
Center Console .....	162
Overhead Console .....	163
Ashtray .....	163
Rear Seat Armrest .....	163

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information .....	164
Push Button Ignition Switch .....	164
Steering Wheel Lock .....	166
Starting a Diesel Engine - Automatic Transmission .....	166
Starting a Diesel Engine - Manual Transmission .....	168
Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	170
Switching Off the Engine .....	172
Engine Block Heater .....	172

# Table of Contents

## Unique Driving Characteristics

Hybrid Vehicle Operation .....	174
Hybrid Vehicle Frequently Asked Questions .....	176

## Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop .....	178
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions .....	178
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off .....	178
Stopping the Engine .....	178
Restarting the Engine .....	178
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators .....	179
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning .....	179
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting .....	179

## Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop .....	181
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions .....	181
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off .....	181
Stopping the Engine .....	181
Restarting the Engine .....	181
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators .....	182
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting .....	182

## Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions .....	184
Fuel Quality - Gasoline .....	184
Fuel Quality - Diesel .....	185
Fuel Filler Funnel Location .....	185
Running Out of Fuel .....	185
Refueling - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	187
Refueling - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	189

Fuel Consumption .....	192
------------------------	-----

## Engine Emission Control

Catalytic Converter .....	194
Selective Catalytic Reductant System - 2.0L EcoBlue .....	196
Gasoline Particulate Filter .....	200
Diesel Particulate Filter .....	202

## High Voltage Battery - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

General Information .....	205
---------------------------	-----

## Transmission

Manual Transmission .....	206
Automatic Transmission - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	206
Automatic Transmission - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission .....	210

## All-Wheel Drive

Using All-Wheel Drive .....	213
-----------------------------	-----

## Brakes

General Information .....	215
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes .....	216
Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission .....	216
Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission .....	218
Hill Start Assist .....	220

## Traction Control

Principle of Operation .....	222
Using Traction Control .....	222

## Stability Control

Principle of Operation .....	223
Using Stability Control .....	223



# Table of Contents

---

## Parking Aids

Principle of Operation .....	224
Rear Parking Aid .....	224
Front Parking Aid .....	226
Side Sensing System .....	228
Active Park Assist .....	229
Rear View Camera .....	236
180 Degree Camera .....	239

## Cruise Control

Principle of Operation .....	240
Using Cruise Control .....	240
Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles Without: Stop and Go .....	241
Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Stop and Go .....	247

## Driving Aids

Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control .....	254
Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: Cruise Control .....	256
Driver Alert .....	258
Lane Keeping System .....	260
Blind Spot Information System .....	264
Cross Traffic Alert .....	265
Traffic Sign Recognition .....	268
Eco .....	269
Pre-Collision Assist .....	270
Front View Camera .....	273
Drive Control .....	274

## Local Hazard Information

What Is Local Hazard Information .....	276
Local Hazard Information Precautions .....	276
Enabling Local Hazard Information .....	276
Checking Local Hazard Information Status .....	276

## Load Carrying

General Information .....	277
Luggage Anchor Points .....	277
Rear Under Floor Storage .....	277
Cargo Nets .....	278
Luggage Covers .....	280
Roof Racks and Load Carriers .....	280
Dog Guard .....	281

## Towing

Towing a Trailer .....	285
Trailer Sway Control .....	286
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Detachable Tow Ball .....	286
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Retractable Tow Ball .....	289
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission .....	291
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Automatic Transmission .....	291

## Driving Hints

Cold Weather Precautions .....	292
Breaking-In .....	292
Driving Economically .....	292
Driving Through Shallow Water .....	292
Floor Mats .....	293

## Roadside Emergencies

Hazard Flashers .....	294
Jump Starting the Vehicle - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	294
Jump Starting the Vehicle - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	296
Towing Points .....	299

## Crash and Breakdown Information

Post-Crash Alert System .....	300
Automatic Crash Shutoff .....	300

# Table of Contents

## Emergency Equipment

Storing a First Aid Kit .....	301
Storing a Warning Triangle .....	301

## Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	302
Fuse Specification Chart - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	313
Changing a Fuse .....	321

## Maintenance

General Information .....	323
Opening and Closing the Hood .....	323
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue, LHD .....	325
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue, RHD .....	326
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L Duratec, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), LHD .....	327
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L Duratec, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), RHD .....	328
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBlue .....	329
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.5L Duratec, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	329
Engine Oil Check .....	329
Engine Cooling Fan - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	330
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel .....	330
Engine Coolant Check - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	330
Engine Coolant Check - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	331
Brake Fluid Check .....	332
Clutch Fluid Check .....	333
Changing the 12V Battery - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	333
Changing the 12V Battery - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	335
Washer Fluid Check .....	336
Checking the Wiper Blades .....	337

Changing the Front Wiper Blades .....	337
Changing the Rear Wiper Blades .....	338
Removing a Headlamp .....	338
Removing a Rear Lamp .....	339
Changing a Bulb .....	340
Bulb Specification Chart .....	344

## Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior .....	346
Cleaning the Interior .....	347
Repairing Minor Paint Damage .....	349
Waxing Your Vehicle .....	349

## Wheels and Tires

General Information .....	350
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....	350
Tire Care .....	355
Using Summer Tires .....	355
Using Winter Tires .....	356
Using Snow Chains .....	356
Tire Pressures .....	357
Lug Nuts .....	359

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	360
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions .....	360
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations .....	360
Viewing the Tire Pressures .....	360
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	361
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting .....	361

## Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions - Galaxy .....	363
Vehicle Dimensions - S-MAX .....	364

# Table of Contents

---

Towbar Dimensions - Galaxy .....	365
Towbar Dimensions - S-MAX .....	367
Vehicle Identification Plate .....	368
Vehicle Identification Number .....	369
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L EcoBlue .....	369
Capacities and Specifications - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	372
Fuel Consumption Figures .....	374
Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.0L EcoBlue .....	374
Fuel Consumption Figures - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	375

## Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle .....	376
Connected Vehicle Requirements .....	376
Connected Vehicle Limitations .....	376
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network .....	376
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network .....	376
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Modem .....	377
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	378

## Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot .....	380
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password .....	380

## Audio System

General Information .....	381
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD .....	382
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony AM/FM/CD .....	384
Digital Radio .....	386
USB Port .....	387
Media Hub .....	388
Audio System – Troubleshooting .....	388

## SYNC™ 3

General Information .....	389
Using Voice Recognition .....	391
Entertainment .....	397
Climate .....	399
Phone .....	402
Navigation .....	404
Apps .....	408
Settings .....	409
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting .....	411

## Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility .....	421
eCall User Information .....	424
End User License Agreement .....	427
Declaration of Conformity .....	453



# Introduction

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

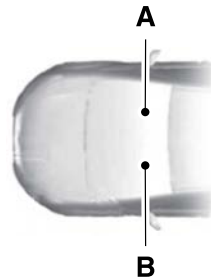
**Note:** *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

**Note:** *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

**Note:** *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



- A Right-hand side.
- B Left-hand side.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Air conditioning system



Air conditioning system lubricant type



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery

# Introduction



Battery acid



Explosive gas



Brake fluid - non petroleum based



Fan warning



Brake system



Fasten seatbelt



Brake system



Flammable



Cabin air filter



Front airbag



Check fuel cap



Front fog lamps



Child safety door lock or unlock



Fuel pump reset



Child seat lower anchor



Fuse compartment



Child seat tether anchor



Hazard flashers



Cruise control



Heated rear window



Do not open when hot



Windshield defrosting system



Engine air filter



Interior luggage compartment release



Engine coolant



Jack



Engine coolant temperature



Keep out of reach of children



Engine oil



Lighting control

# Introduction



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Note operating instructions



Horn control



Panic alarm



Parking aid



Parking brake



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Requires registered technician



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



See Service Manual



Service engine soon



Passenger airbag activated



Passenger airbag deactivated



Side airbag



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Hill descent control



Trail control



Windshield wiping system



Windshield wash and wipe

## REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

# Introduction

---

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

**Note:** To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

### Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

### Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

### Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



# Introduction

---

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

# Data Privacy



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this manual was correct at the time of publication, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

**Note:** *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

## Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

## Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

# Data Privacy

---

## SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

**Note:** *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

## EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note:** *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

# Data Privacy

## SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe. See **Settings** (page 409).

## Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

## Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA - VEHICLES WITH: MODEM



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network

service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com) or refer to your local Ford website.

**Note:** *The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 376).*

**Note:** *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).*

## MOBILE DEVICE DATA - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Apps** (page 408).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

# Data Privacy

---

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Settings** (page 409).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).*

## EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA - VEHICLES WITH: ECALL

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services

operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system transmits are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle fuel type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.

**Note:** *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

# Environment

---

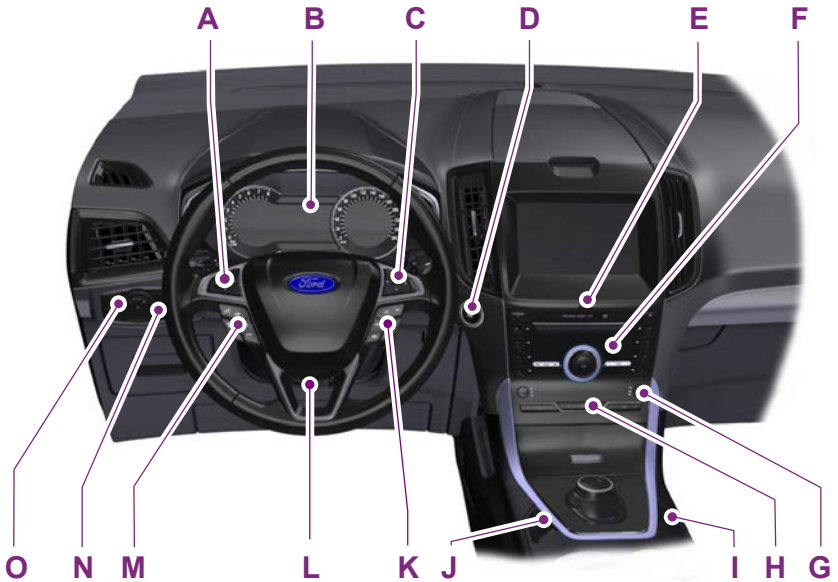
## **PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT**

You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit [www.sustainability.ford.com](http://www.sustainability.ford.com).

# At a Glance

## INSTRUMENT PANEL - LHD



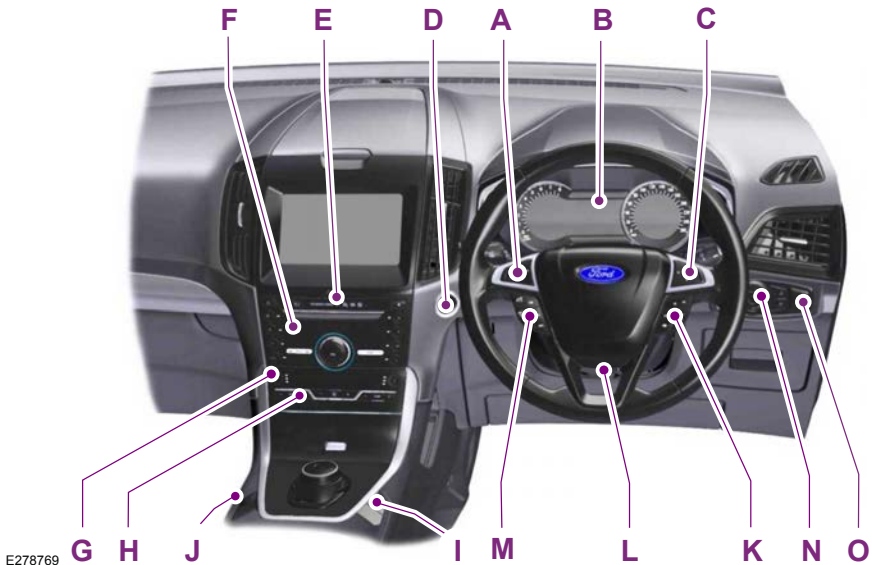
E278770

- A Information display controls. See **General Information** (page 106).
- B Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 96).
- C Information display controls. See **General Information** (page 106).
- D Push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 164).
- E Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 294). Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Passenger Airbag** (page 35).
- F Audio Unit. See **Audio System** (page 381).
- G Heated seat switch. See **Heated Seats** (page 156).
- H Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 128).
- I Parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 216).
- J Parking aid button. See **Parking Aids** (page 224). Auto-Start-Stop button. See **What is Auto-Start-Stop** (page 181).
- K Audio control. Voice control.

## At a Glance

- L Steering wheel adjustment lever. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 70).
- M Cruise control buttons. See **Cruise Control** (page 240).
- N Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 78).
- O Power liftgate button. See **Power Liftgate** (page 63).

### INSTRUMENT PANEL - RHD



E278769

- A Information display controls. See **General Information** (page 106).
- B Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 96).
- C Information display controls. See **General Information** (page 106).
- D Push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 164).
- E Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 294). Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Passenger Airbag** (page 35).
- F Audio Unit. See **Audio System** (page 381).
- G Heated seat switch. See **Heated Seats** (page 156).



# At a Glance

---

- H Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 128).
- I Parking aid button. See **Parking Aids** (page 224). Auto-Start-Stop button. See **What Is Auto-Start-Stop** (page 181).
- J Parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 216).
- K Audio control. Voice control.
- L Steering wheel adjustment lever. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 70).
- M Cruise control buttons. See **Cruise Control** (page 240).
- N Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 78).
- O Power liftgate button. See **Power Liftgate** (page 63).

# Child Safety

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



E161855



E68916

**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

**WARNING:** Do not modify child restraints in any way.

**WARNING:** Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

**Note:** *When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.*

# Child Safety

## Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

### Baby Safety Restraint (Group 0+)



Secure children that weigh less than 13 kg (29 lb) in a rearward facing baby safety restraint (Group 0+) on the rear seat.

### Child Safety Restraint (Group 1)



Secure children that weigh between 13 kg (29 lb) and 18 kg (40 lb) in a child safety restraint (Group 1) on the rear seat.

## Booster Seats

**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

**WARNING:** Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

**WARNING:** You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

# Child Safety

## Booster Seat (Group 2)



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

## Booster Cushion (Group 3)

**WARNING:** When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

## ISOFIX Anchor Points

**WARNING:** Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



The ISOFIX system has two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint. These attach to anchor points on the outermost rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet.

**Note:** If you are purchasing an ISOFIX child restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Restraint Positioning** (page 26).

# Child Safety

## Top Tether Anchor Points



E87146

For child restraints with a top tether, tether anchor points are on the back of the second row seats.

## Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers

**WARNING:** Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

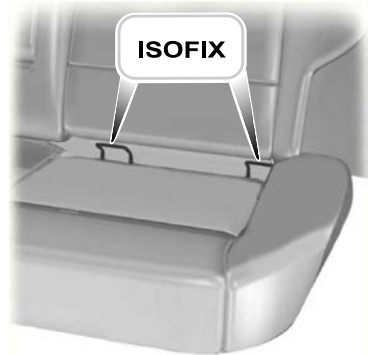
**WARNING:** Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

1. Attach the tether strap to the anchor point.

**Note:** Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See **Luggage Covers** (page 280).

**Note:** You may need to lift or remove the head restraint to ease installation. See **Head Restraints** (page 141).

2. Remove the ISOFIX lower anchor point covers.



3. Push the child restraint back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
4. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

## Attaching a Child Restraint With a Support Leg

**WARNING:** If you use a child restraint with a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the underfloor storage compartment cover. Make sure the spacer which stores the tire repair kit is in the storage and the lid is closed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

# Child Safety

**WARNING:** Make sure that the child restraint manufacturer lists your vehicle as suitable for use with this type of child restraint.



E185352

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a support leg.

## CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

**WARNING:** If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.

**WARNING:** If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.

**WARNING:** When using a child restraint on a rear seat, the child restraint must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It must not touch the head restraint. If necessary remove the head restraint.

See **Head Restraints** (page 141).

**WARNING:** You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

See **Head Restraints** (page 141).

**Note:** See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

# Child Safety

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	Up to 22 lbs (10 kg)	Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)	20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg)	33 - 55 lbs (15 - 25 kg)	46 - 79 lbs (22 - 36 kg)
	Baby safety seat		Child safety seat	Booster seat or cushion	
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>ON</b>	X	X	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1 3</sup>	UF <sup>1 3</sup>
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>OFF</b>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1 3</sup>	U <sup>1 3</sup>
Second row seats	U	U	U	U <sup>3</sup>	U <sup>3</sup>
Third row Galaxy	U	U	U	U <sup>3</sup>	U <sup>3</sup>
Third row S-Max	X	X	UF <sup>2</sup>	UF <sup>2 3</sup>	UF <sup>2 3</sup>

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

U<sup>1</sup> Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group. We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

UF<sup>1</sup> Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group. We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

UF<sup>2</sup> Suitable for universal forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group. Groups 2 and 3 booster seats with a backrest might be limited in the height adjustment of the back. See the child restraint owner manual.

<sup>3</sup> At time of publishing, the recommended Group II/III child restraint is the Britax Romer Kidfix XP.

# Child Safety

**Note:** When using a child restraint on a front seat, the following longitudinal seat positioning guideline should be followed: The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel. The passenger seat should be positioned as far rearward as possible by having a seat belt routing (from B-Pillar ring to child restraint) in a forward direction. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the safety belt without slack remaining, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat. See **Seats** (page 141).

**Note:** When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the seat in front of it in a position to prevent contact with the rear passenger, child feet or child legs. Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary adjust the seatback to an upright position. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 141).

## ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating positions		Mass group categories			
		0	0+	1	
		Rear facing		Forward facing	Rear facing
		Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)		20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg)	
Front passenger seat	Size class	Not ISOFIX equipped			
	Seat type				
Second row seat ISOFIX	Size class	C, D, E <sup>1</sup>	A, B, B1 <sup>1</sup>	C, D <sup>1</sup>	
	Seat type	IL <sup>2</sup>	IL <sup>2</sup> , IUF <sup>3</sup>	IL <sup>2</sup>	



# Child Safety

Seating positions		Mass group categories			
		0	0+	1	
		Rear facing		Forward facing	Rear facing
		Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)		20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg)	
Third row seats	Size class	Not ISOFIX equipped			
	Seat type				

IL Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems of the semi-universal category. Please consult child restraints systems suppliers' vehicle recommendation lists.

IUF Suitable for ISOFIX forward facing child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group and ISOFIX size class.

<sup>1</sup>The ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems is defined by the capital letters A to G. These identification letters are displayed on the ISOFIX child restraint.

<sup>2</sup>At time of publishing the recommended Group O+ ISOFIX baby safety seat is the Britax Romer Baby Safe. See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

<sup>3</sup>At time of publishing the recommended Group 1 ISOFIX child restraint is the Britax Romer Duo. See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

## I-Size Child Restraints

-	Front passenger seat	Rear outboard seats	Rear center seat
I-Size child restraint systems	X	I-U	X

I-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing I-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with I-Size child restraint systems.

# Child Safety

---

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

(If Equipped)



E259984

Press the switch to turn them on.

Press the switch again to turn them off.

**Note:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

**Note:** You cannot use the rear power window switches if you have put the child safety locks on.

**Note:** If the LED flashes, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Seatbelts

## FASTENING THE SEATBELTS



**WARNING:** You have not fastened the safety belt correctly if you do not hear a distinct click. Failure to fasten the safety belt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



**WARNING:** Make sure that your safety belt is securely stored away and is not outside your vehicle when closing the door. Failure of an occupant to be able to use a trapped safety belt increases the risk of serious personal injury or death.



E194532

# Seatbelts

The retractor for the rear center seat belt is located in the roof.

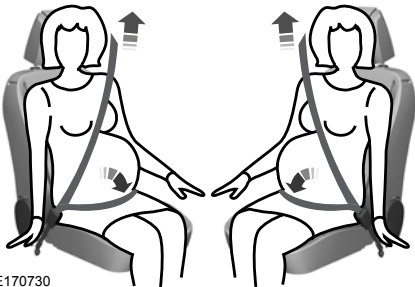
To fasten the seat belt:

1. Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.
2. Insert the smaller tongue into the black buckle to the left of the center seat.
3. Pull the larger tongue across the lap and insert it into the buckle to the right of the center seat.

**Note:** *If in constant use, you can leave the belt buckled in the black buckle. When it is not in use, or when you fold or move the rear seats, you should release the belt from the black buckle.*

**Note:** *The rear outer safety belts can lock if you return the seatback from a folded position to the upright position forcefully. Should the safety belt lock, recline the seat using the recline adjustment. See **Rear Seats** (page 149).*

## Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy



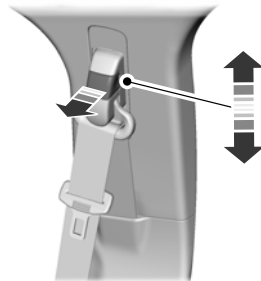
E170730

**WARNING:** Position the safety belt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap. Failure to adjust the safety belt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



1. Pull the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.

# Seatbelts

---

2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT REMINDER



**WARNING:** The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

A warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning sounds when the following conditions have been met:

- The driver seat is occupied or the front seats are occupied.
- The front seatbelts have not been fastened.
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

It also illuminates when a front seatbelt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.

If you do not fasten your seatbelt, the audible and visual warnings turn off after approximately five minutes.

### Switching the Seatbelt Reminder Off

Contact an authorized dealer.

### Seatbelt Monitor

A tick symbol displays confirming the seatbelt has been fastened.

An exclamation mark displays and a tone sounds if a seatbelt is unfastened.

**Note:** *If multiple seatbelts are unfastened within a few seconds of each other, only one tone sounds.*

# Supplementary Restraints System

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

**WARNING:** Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

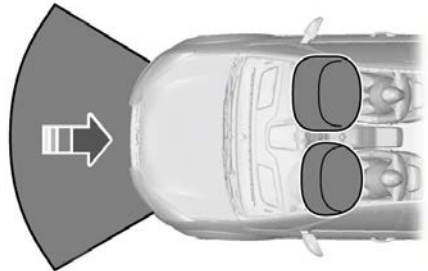
**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

**Note:** A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth.

## DRIVER AIRBAG

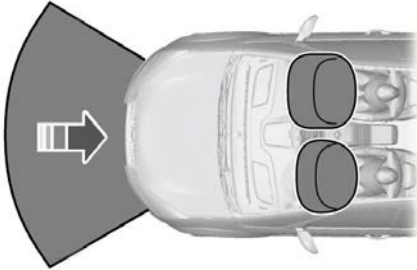


E74302

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## PASSENGER AIRBAG



E74302

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

### Switching the Passenger Airbag Off

**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

The switch is on the passenger side end of the instrument panel. The passenger airbag deactivation indicator is in the center console.



E71313

1. Insert the key blade into the switch.



E254890

2. Turn the key to **OFF**.
3. When you switch the ignition on, check that the passenger airbag **OFF** indicator illuminates. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Switching the Passenger Airbag On

**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

# Supplementary Restraints System

1. Insert the key blade into the switch.





E254889

2. Turn the key to **ON**.
3. When you switch the ignition on, check that the passenger airbag **ON** indicator illuminates. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.


## SIDE AIRBAGS


### All vehicles

 **WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

 **WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

 **WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



E72658

### Vehicles With: Driver Side Airbag/Passenger Side Airbag

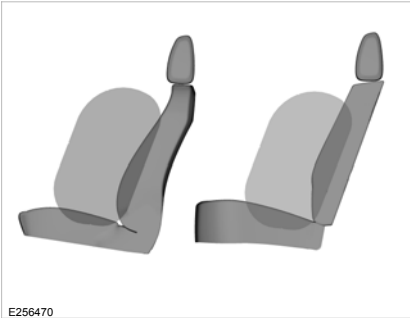




# Supplementary Restraints System

The side airbag is on the outermost side of each front seat backrest.

## Vehicles With: Rear Seat Side Airbag



The side airbag is on the outermost side of each outermost rear seat backrest.

## All vehicles

The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

## Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Airbag Secondary Warning Audible Warning

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

## DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing a cushion between the driver's knees and the steering column. During overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the knee airbag will not deploy.

**Note:** *The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor collision, it is possible that only the knee airbag will deploy.*

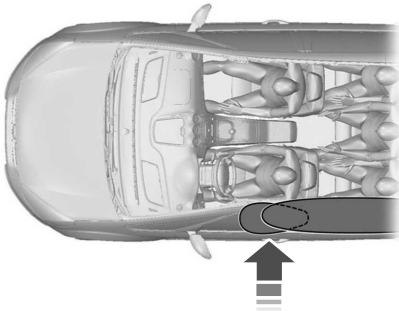
## SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

# Supplementary Restraints System

---



The airbags are above the front and rear side windows.

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

# Pedestrian Alert System - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

---

## WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Electric drive vehicles can be extremely

quiet. The pedestrian alert system is designed to generate a sound to alert pedestrians to the presence of an electric drive vehicle.

## PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### Pedestrian Alert System – Information Messages

<b>Message</b>	<b>Condition</b>	<b>Action</b>
Pedestrian sounder malfunction Service now	The system has malfunctioned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Automatic Crash Notification System

## ECALL



**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** The system is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758. See **eCall User Information** (page 424). It uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants.

**Note:** The system is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

**Note:** The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford audio system.

**Note:** The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

**Note:** Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

**Note:** In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

**Note:** If the system is unable to initiate a call to the emergency services, a voice prompt plays and the emergency call system indicator illuminates.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Event Data** (page 15).

Examples of data that the system transmits are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle fuel type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.

**Note:** The emergency operator may not receive your vehicle data if the transmission is unsuccessful.

The emergency call system indicator illuminates brightly for a short time when you switch the ignition on. If it remains on or does not illuminate at all, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Emergency Call System Indicator



The indicator is integrated into the emergency call button on the overhead console.

# Automatic Crash Notification System

Emergency Call System Indicator Status	Description
Dimmed red.	Normal operation.
Rapidly flashing.	The system is initiating an emergency call.
Moderately flashing.	The system is transmitting vehicle data to the emergency services.
Slowly flashing.	The system is connected to the emergency services and communication is established.
Bright red.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Emergency Call System Information Messages

Message	Description
Emergency call system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Automatically Initiated Emergency Call

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, the system initiates a call to the emergency services. This call cannot be canceled.

## Manually Initiated Emergency Call



**WARNING:** Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

1. Switch the ignition on.

2. Press the emergency call button to initiate a call to the emergency services.

**Note:** Press the button again before the call is connected to cancel it.

3. Speak to the operator.

**Note:** After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for up to an hour.

## Changing the Backup Battery

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

# Automatic Crash Notification System

## EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE



**WARNING:** Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.



**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

**Note:** *Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.*

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, the system initiates a call to the emergency services.

**Note:** *Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Emergency Assistance feature and the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.*

**Note:** *When you switch Emergency Assistance on or off, the settings apply to all paired mobile phones. If you switch Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown or both.*

**Note:** *Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

**Note:** *In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.*

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

# Automatic Crash Notification System

---

**Note:** *This feature only works in a country where Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.*

## In the Event of a Crash

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system initiates a call to the emergency services.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

**Note:** *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, which may turn on Emergency Assistance. However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered, the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone and initiates a call to the emergency services.*

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

**Note:** *While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.*

**Note:** *During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.*

**Note:** *It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.*

**Note:** *It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.*

# Automatic Crash Notification System

---

**Note:** *The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from Emergency Assistance.*

## **Emergency Assistance may not work if:**

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a country where Emergency Assistance cannot call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.

## **Important Information About Emergency Assistance**

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following countries:

- Albania.
- Armenia.
- Azerbaijan.
- Belarus.
- Bosnia and Herzegovina.
- Georgia.
- Macedonia.
- Moldova.
- Netherlands.
- Russia.
- Ukraine.

## **Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice**

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.



# Keys and Remote Controls

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.

**Note:** The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

## REMOTE CONTROL

### Passive Key

Your passive keys operate the power locks and the remote start system. The key must be in your vehicle to activate the push-button start system.



**Note:** Your vehicle's backup keys came with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.

### Removable Key Blade

The passive key contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.

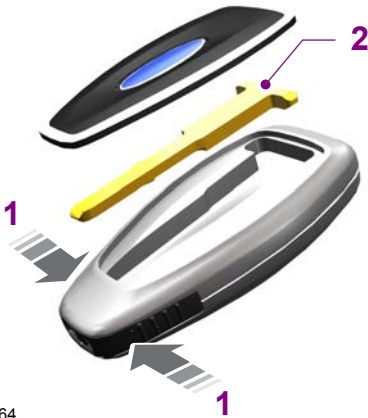
#### Type 1



Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## Type 2



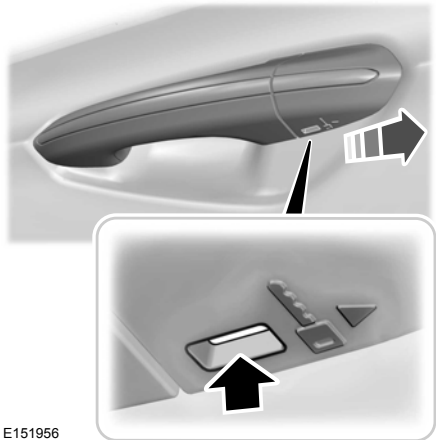
E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.

### Using the Key Blade

The key cylinder is under a cap on the driver door handle.

To remove the cap:



E151956

1. Insert the key blade into the slot on the bottom of the handle and press up.
2. While maintaining upward pressure, move the cap rearward to release it. Gently remove the key while doing so.

To install the cap:



E151957

1. Place the cap just rearward of the key cylinder.
2. While applying pressure to the cap, move it forward until it is in place. You may hear a snap as it engages.

Make sure you have properly installed the cap by trying to move it rearward.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## Changing the Remote Control Battery



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

**Note:** *You do not need to reprogram the remote control after you have replaced its battery, it should operate normally.*

A message will appear in the information display when the remote control battery is low. See **Information Messages** (page 111).

### Type 1

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.



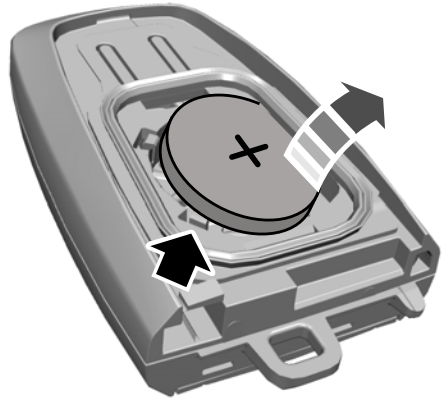
1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

## Keys and Remote Controls



E218401

2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.

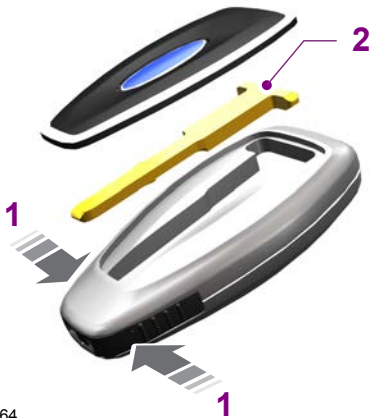
**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

5. Reinstall the battery cover and the key blade.

### Type 2

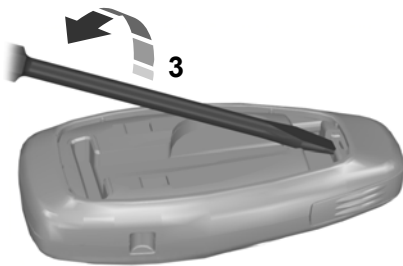
The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

# Keys and Remote Controls



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



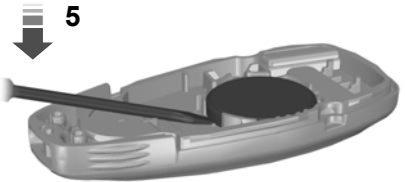
E105362

3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully separate the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.



E125860

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.  
**Note:** Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.
6. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward.  
**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.
7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Reinstall the key blade.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## Locating Your Vehicle

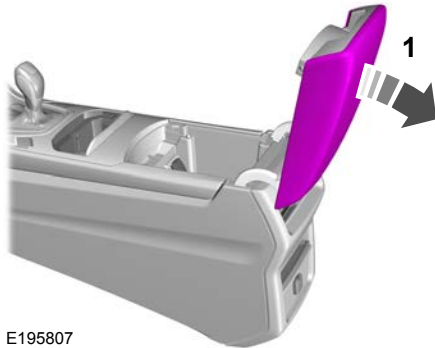


Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators flash.

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

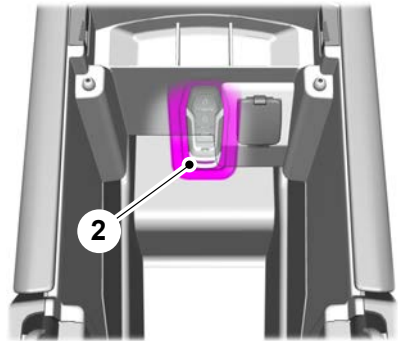
Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

## PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION



E195807

1. Open the center console lid.



E195808

2. Place the passive key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The system is designed to promote good driving behaviors using keys that you have programmed with some restricted settings.

## MYKEY SETTINGS

### Non-Configurable Settings

#### Seatbelt Reminder

The audio system mutes when the seatbelt reminder turns on. The seatbelt reminder cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

#### Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

#### Driving and Parking Aids

Parking aids, blind spot information system and cross traffic alert turn on when you start the engine and cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Pre-collision assist and lane keeping alert turn on when you start the engine, but can be switched off with a MyKey.

A new destination in the navigation system can only be set using voice commands, when using a MyKey and your vehicle is moving.

### Configurable Settings

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).

### Speed Limit



**WARNING:** Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

### Speed Reminder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

### Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume is reduced. A message appears in the information display if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

### Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

### Do Not Disturb

If you set do not disturb to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

### Traction Control

If you set traction control to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

## CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

**To create a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Create MyKey	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
	Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** We recommend that you label this key.

## CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Place an admin key in the backup position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page 50).
2. Switch the ignition on.

**To create a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Create MyKey	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
	Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** We recommend that you label this key.

## PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

You can only program MyKeys to the same settings.



# MyKey™

---

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

**To program a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button. Choose a setting and press the <b>OK</b> button. Configure the setting. Switch the ignition off.

# MyKey™

---

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all

restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

**To clear all MyKeys, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Clear MyKeys	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about your programmed MyKeys by using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 106).

### MyKey Distance

Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear all MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.

### Number of MyKeys

Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when all MyKeys have been deleted.

### Number of Admin Keys

Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many admin keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

The system is not compatible with non-Ford remote start systems.

## MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

### What is an admin key?

- An admin key is a key that has not been created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).

### Why can I not create a MyKey?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key.

### Why can I not program a MyKey?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).

### Why can I not clear the MyKeys?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).

### Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?

- The key used to start the engine is an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).
- The MyKeys have been cleared.

## MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

### What is an admin key?

- An admin key is a key that has not been created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).

### Why can I not create a MyKey?

- The admin key is not placed in the backup position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page 50).
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key.
- The last MyKey was created without switching the ignition off.

### Why can I not program a MyKey?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).

### Why can I not clear the MyKeys?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).

### Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?

- The key used to start the engine is an admin key.
- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).
- The MyKeys have been cleared.

### Why can I not start the engine with a MyKey?

- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.

# Doors and Locks

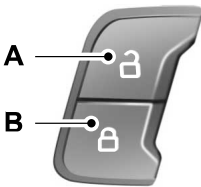
## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

**Note:** Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** Do not leave your keys in your vehicle.

### Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



A Unlock.

B Lock.

### Door Lock Indicator

An LED on the door window trim illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to 5 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

### Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle while the ignition is off, the power door lock switch will no longer operate after 20 seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on to restore function to these switches. You can switch this feature on or off in the Information Display. See **Information Displays** (page 106).

### Remote Control

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

### Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

**Note:** The driver door can be unlocked with the key if the remote control is not functioning.

**Note:** When you leave your vehicle unattended for several weeks, the remote control turns off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once enables the remote control.

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

**Note:** When you press the unlock button, either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process. You can switch this feature on or off in the Information Display. See **Information Displays** (page 106).

### Central Locking



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors have been locked and that the alarm has been armed.

### Mislock

This warns you that your vehicle has not locked.

# Doors and Locks

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the luggage compartment is open.
- The hood is open on vehicles that have an anti-theft alarm or remote start.

When you press the lock button again within three seconds, the horn sounds indicating that your vehicle has pre-locked while a door is open. You can switch this feature on or off in the Information Display. See **Information Displays** (page 106).

## Double Locking the Doors



**WARNING:** Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. It will only operate if all of the doors are fully closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction

indicators confirms that all the doors have been double locked and that the alarm has been armed.

## Auto Relock

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state. You can disable this function from the Information Display. See **Information Displays** (page 106).

## Autounlock

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed and your vehicle is moving at a speed greater than 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to the accessory position.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to the accessory position.

You can switch this feature on or off in the Information Display. See **Information Displays** (page 106).

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside

Use the power door lock control.

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

### Locking with the Key Blade

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

### Double Locking with the Key Blade

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle twice within three seconds.

### Unlocking with the Key Blade

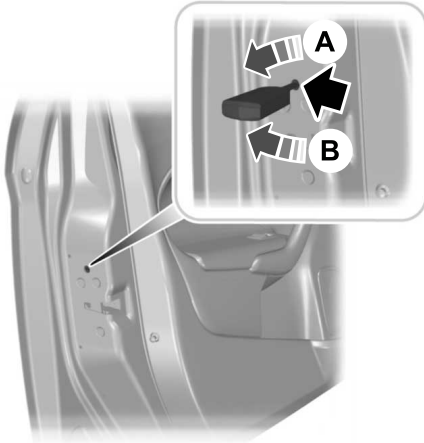
Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

**Note:** *If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior door handle, you will only switch off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the exterior door handle.*

# Doors and Locks

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors Individually with the Key Blade

### Locking



If the central locking function fails to operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

#### **Left-Hand Side**

Turn clockwise to lock.

#### **Right-Hand Side**

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

### Unlocking

If the central locking function fails to operate, unlock the driver door and then unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

**Note:** *If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.*

## KEYLESS ENTRY

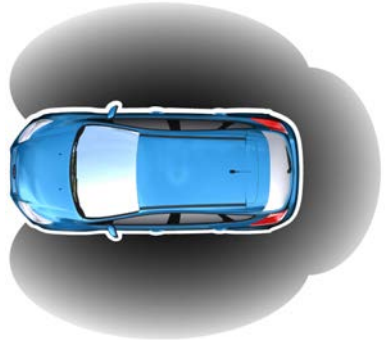
### General Information

The system does not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery has no charge.

**Note:** *If the system does not function, you need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.*

The system allows you to operate your vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately 1 m (3 ft) from the front door handles and the liftgate.

**Note:** *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

# Doors and Locks

## Passive Key

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of the door in order to lock or unlock your vehicle.

Your vehicle can be locked and unlocked with the passive key. You can use the passive key as a remote control. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 57).

## Unlocking Your Vehicle

**Note:** When your vehicle remains locked for longer than three days, the system enters an energy-saving mode. This is to prevent your vehicle battery running out of charge. When your vehicle is unlocked while in this mode, the reaction time of the system may be a little longer than normal. To exit the energy-saving mode, unlock your vehicle.



With your passive key within 1 m (3 ft) of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the exterior door handle for a few seconds, and then pull on the door handle to unlock your vehicle. Be careful to not touch the lock sensor or pull the door handle too quickly or your vehicle may remain locked. When unlocking your vehicle, a slight delay is required for your vehicle to verify the passive key.

## Unlocking Only the Driver Door

You can program the system so that only the driver door is unlocked. See **Remote Control** (page 45).

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver door is unlocked, the following occurs:

- If the driver door is the first door opened, all the other doors remain locked. All the other doors can be unlocked from inside your vehicle by pressing the unlock button. The other doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handle on the respective door.
- If the front passenger door is the first door opened, all the doors unlock.

## Locking Your Vehicle

**Note:** If you do not touch a locking sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.

**Note:** On some vehicles, locking sensors are located on all four doors.

**Note:** When locking your vehicle, do not grip the door handle.

**Note:** Keep the door handle surface clean to make sure the system operates correctly.



With your passive key within 1 m (3 ft) of your vehicle, touch the exterior door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock your vehicle. Be careful to not touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time or your vehicle may remain unlocked. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking your vehicle.

For central locking and to arm the alarm, touch a locking sensor once. For double locking and to arm the alarm, touch a locking sensor twice within three seconds.



# Doors and Locks

## Opening the Liftgate

**Note:** *If the doors are locked and you close the liftgate with the passive key inside the luggage compartment, the liftgate reopens.*

**Note:** *If a second valid passive key is located within the liftgate detection range, the liftgate can be closed.*

Press the liftgate release button to open the liftgate.

## Disabled Passive Keys

Any key left inside your vehicle interior when it is locked becomes disabled.

You cannot use a disabled key to switch the ignition on or start the engine.

You must enable all passive keys again in order to use them.

To enable all your passive keys, unlock your vehicle using a passive key that has not been disabled or the remote control unlocking function.

All passive keys then become enabled if you switch the ignition on or you start your vehicle with a valid key.

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade



E151796

Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off to access the key blade. See **Remote Control** (page 45).

**Note:** *Only the driver door handle has a lock cylinder.*

# Liftgate

## MANUAL LIFTGATE



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

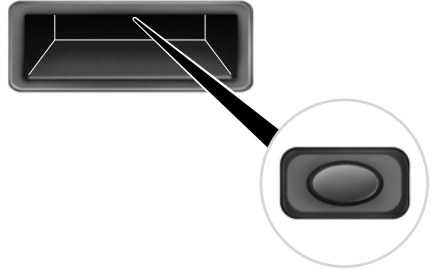
**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## Opening the Liftgate

### Manually



Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, and then pull on the outside handle.

### With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

## Closing the Liftgate



E155976

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

# Liftgate

## POWER LIFTGATE



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

For automatic transmissions, the liftgate only operates with the transmission in park (P).

If there is a problem with the open or close request, a tone will sound for one of the following reasons:

- The ignition is on and the transmission is not in park (P).
- The vehicle battery charge is low.
- Your vehicle speed is more than approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

If the liftgate starts to close after it has fully opened, this indicates there may be excessive weight on the liftgate or a possible strut failure. A repetitive tone sounds and the liftgate closes under control. If the liftgate continues to close after opening, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## Opening and Closing the Liftgate



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## From the Instrument Panel



With the transmission in park (P), press the button on the instrument panel.

## Remote Control



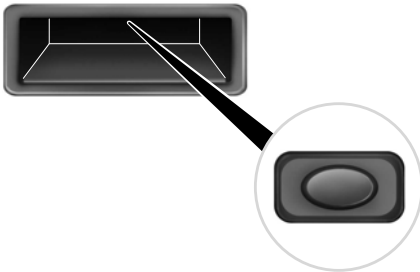
Press the button twice within three seconds.

# Liftgate

## Outside Control Button

### Opening the Liftgate

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control. If an intelligent access key is within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.



2. Press the control button located in the top of the liftgate pull-cup handle.

**Note:** Allow the system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may turn on obstacle detection and stop the power operation or reverse its direction. Manually interfering with the liftgate motion may also replicate a strut failure.

### Stopping the Liftgate Movement

**Note:** Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.

- Pressing the liftgate button on the instrument panel.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.\*

\*This method only works for vehicles with the hands-free liftgate feature.

### Setting the Liftgate Open Height

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

**Note:** Once the liftgate has stopped moving, you can also manually move it to the desired height.

3. Press and hold the liftgate control button on the liftgate until you hear a tone, indicating programming is complete.

**Note:** You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.

**Note:** You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.

The new open liftgate height is recalled when the power liftgate is opened. To change the programmed height, repeat the above procedure. Once you open the power liftgate, you can manually move it to a different height.

**Note:** The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.

To fully open the power liftgate with a lowered open height, push it upward manually after it has stopped moving.

# Liftgate

## Obstacle Detection

### When Closing the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. When you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

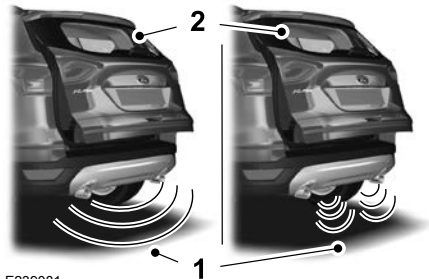
**Note:** *Entering your vehicle while the liftgate is closing can cause your vehicle to bounce and activate obstacle detection. To prevent this, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle. Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a liftgate or door ajar message or warning indicator. Failure to do this could result in unintentionally leaving the liftgate open while driving.*

### When Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

## Hands-Free Feature

Make sure you have an intelligent access transmitter within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.



1. Move your foot under and away from the rear bumper detection area in a single-kick motion. Do not move your foot sideways or the sensors may not detect the motion. Kick between the exhaust and hitch if your vehicle is equipped with a hitch.
2. The liftgate will power open or close.

**Note:** *Allow the system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may turn on obstacle detection and stop the power operation or reverse its direction. Manually interfering with the liftgate motion may also replicate a strut failure.*

**Note:** *Splashing water may cause the hands-free liftgate to open. Keep the intelligent access key away from the rear bumper detection area when washing your vehicle.*

# Security

---

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** *Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

### Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

**Note:** *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may result in vehicle starting problems, especially if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle.*

### Arming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer arms after a short period of time when you switch the ignition off.

### Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer disarms when you switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRAL BATTERY

### Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood.

### Interior Sensors

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

When you lock your vehicle and arm the alarm, the sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

**Note:** *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

### Inclination Sensors

When you lock your vehicle and arm the alarm, the sensors are designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

### Battery Back-up Sounder (If Equipped)

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm component that has its own battery and sounds a siren if the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder is disconnected. The system arms when you lock your vehicle and the ignition is off.

### Triggering the Alarm

When armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.

# Security

- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the hazard flasher flashes for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

## Full and Reduced Guard

### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the inclination and interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

### Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 106).

### Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set. See **General Information** (page 106).

## Arming the Alarm

The alarm arms when you lock your vehicle and the ignition is off. See **Doors and Locks** (page 57).

## Disarming the Alarm

### Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

### Vehicles with Keyless Entry

#### Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

**Note:** *A valid passive key must be within the detection range of that door. See **Keyless Entry** (page 59).*

#### Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on, or by unlocking the doors or the liftgate with the remote control.

**Note:** *A valid passive key must be within the detection range of that door. See **Keyless Entry** (page 59).*

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTERIOR SENSOR

### Alarm System

**Note:** *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle. The alarm could unintentionally turn on.*

# Security

## Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

## Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console.

**Note:** Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized intrusion by sensing any movement inside your vehicle.

## Inclination Sensors

When you lock your vehicle and arm the alarm, the sensors are designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

## Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.

## Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Alarm	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

## Full and Reduced Guard

### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

## Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 106).

## Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.



# Security

Message	Action and Description
Ask on exit	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Reduced guard	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the <b>OK</b> button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the <b>OK</b> button.

**Note:** *Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.*

## Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 57).

## Disarming the Alarm

### Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

### Vehicles with Keyless Entry

**Note:** *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 59).*

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the hazard flasher flashes.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

## Arming the Alarm

The alarm arms when you lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 57).

## Disarming the Alarm

### Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

### Vehicles With Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

**Note:** *A valid passive key must be within the detection range of that door. See **Keyless Entry** (page 59).*

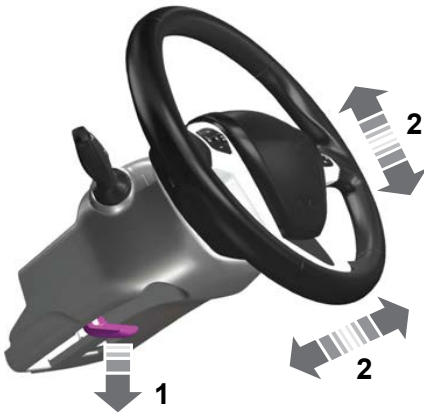
# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL ADJUSTABLE STEERING COLUMN



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 141).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: POWER ADJUSTABLE STEERING COLUMN



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 141).

# Steering Wheel



E161834

Use the control on the side of the steering column to adjust the position.

To adjust:

- Tilt: Press the top or bottom of the control.
- Telescope: Press the front or rear of the control.

## End of Travel Position

The steering column sets a stopping position just short of the end of the column position to prevent damage to the steering column. A new stopping position sets if the steering column encounters an object when tilting or telescoping.

To reset the steering column to its normal stopping position:

1. Confirm there is nothing obstructing the motion of the steering column.
2. Press and hold the steering column control until the steering column stops moving.
3. Press the steering column control again. The steering column may begin to move again.

4. When the steering column stops, continue holding the control for an additional few seconds.
5. Repeat for each direction as necessary.

A new stopping position is set. The next time you tilt or telescope the steering column, it will stop just short of the end of the column position.

## Memory Feature

You can save and recall the steering column position with the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 147).

**Note:** Pressing the adjustment control during memory recall cancels the operation.

## Easy Entry and Exit Feature

When you switch the ignition off, the steering column will move to allow extra room to exit your vehicle. The column will return to the previous setting when you switch the ignition on. You can enable or disable this feature in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 106).

## HEATED STEERING WHEEL (IF EQUIPPED)

Switch the heated steering wheel on and off using the touchscreen.



Touch the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.

**Note:** You can use the heated steering wheel only when the engine is running.

**Note:** The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.

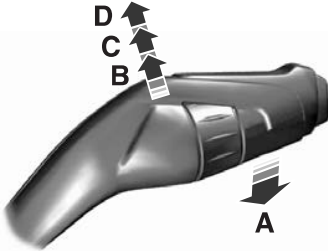
# Steering Wheel

---

**Note:** *In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.*

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS



E197525

- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.

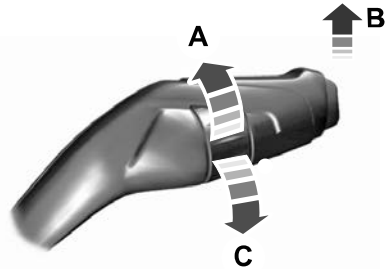
**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

**Note:** If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 337). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 337).

**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

## Intermittent Wipe



E197526

- A Short wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Long wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

**Note:** When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

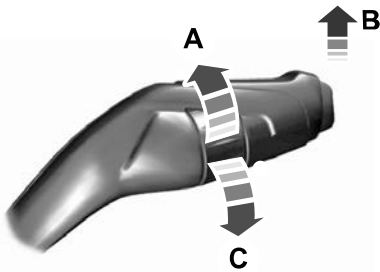
## AUTOWIPERS (IF EQUIPPED)

Autowipers uses a rain sensor in the area around the interior mirror. The wipers operate when the rain sensor detects water on the windshield in front of it. The rain sensor continues to monitor the amount of water and adjusts the speed of the wipers.

You can switch autowipers on or off in the information display.

**Note:** If you switch autowipers off in the information display, the windshield wipers operate in intermittent mode.

# Wipers and Washers



E197526

- A High sensitivity.
- B Autowipers on.
- C Low sensitivity.

Move the wiper lever upward to the first position to switch autowipers on.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

**Note:** Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

## Settings

To switch autowipers on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Wipers	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Rain sensing	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

If you leave autowipers on, it may not operate when you switch the ignition on during freezing temperatures. This is because the system has deactivated the rain sensor to prevent damage to the windshield wipers. Defrost the windshield before reactivating the rain sensor. You can reactivate the rain sensor by moving the rotary control or switching autowipers off and on.

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Wet or winter weather conditions could cause unexpected wiping or smearing.

To keep the windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch autowipers off.

**Note:** If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 337). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 337).

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS



E197528

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time. A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid.



E271306

The wiper blades distribute washer fluid directly onto the windshield only when the wipers are moving upward.

You can switch courtesy wipe on or off in the information display.

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

## Settings

To switch courtesy wipe on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Wipers	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Courtesy wipe	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

# Wipers and Washers

## REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS (IF EQUIPPED)

### Rear Window Wiper



E171615

- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Continuous wipe.
- C Rear window wiper off.

The rear window wiper also turns on when you shift into reverse and the windshield wipers are on.

You can switch reverse wipe off in the information display.

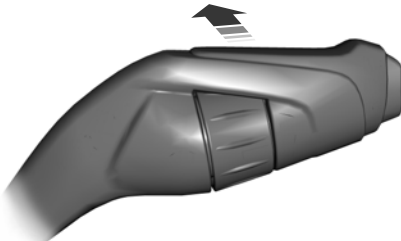
**Note:** Make sure that you switch the rear window wiper off before entering a car wash.

### Settings

To switch reverse wipe on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Wipers	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Reverse wiper	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

### Rear Window Washer



E167407

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wiper operates for a short time.

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

## HEADLAMP WASHERS (IF EQUIPPED)

If you operate the windshield washers when the headlamps are on, the headlamp washers turn on.



# Wipers and Washers

---

**Note:** *The headlamp washers do not operate every time you use the windshield washers. This is to prevent the washer fluid reservoir from emptying quickly.*

# Lighting

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

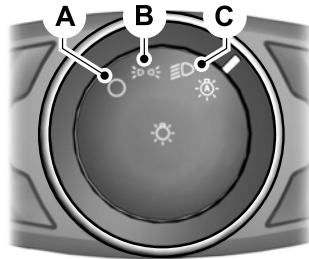
- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## LIGHTING CONTROL



- A Off.
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.
- C Headlamps.

**Note:** Prolonged use of the parking lamps causes the battery to run out of charge.

**Note:** Parking lamps may turn off automatically. This prevents the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

### Parking Lamps (If Equipped)

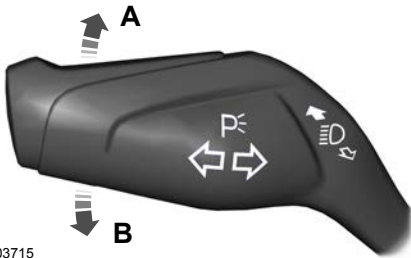
Switch the ignition off.

### Both Sides

Select position B on the lighting control to switch the parking lamps on.

# Lighting

## One Side



E203715

- A Right-hand side.
- B Left-hand side.

## High Beams



E162679

Push the lever forward to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

## Headlamp Flasher

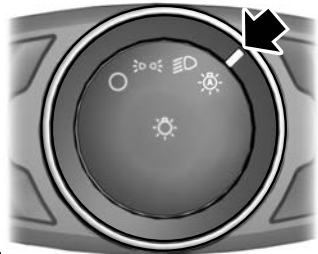


E162680

Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

## AUTOLAMPS

**⚠ WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps turn on in low light situations, or when the wipers turn on.

# Lighting

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on.

**Note:** *If you switch the autolamps on, you cannot switch the high beams on until the system turns the low beams on.*

## Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

When you switch the autolamps on, the headlamps turn on within 10 seconds of switching the wipers on. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps do not turn on with the wipers:

- During a single wipe.
- When using the windshield washers.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

**Note:** *If you switch the autolamps and the autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



## HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you again or switching the ignition on.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system during inclement weather.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



**WARNING:** The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



**WARNING:** Inspect and replace the windshield wiper blades regularly to make sure the camera sensor has a clear view. The windshield wiper blades must be the correct length.

# Lighting

## About Automatic High Beam Control

The system is designed to turn the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switched the system on in the information display.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that high beams are required.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

The system is designed to turn the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off in the information display.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- Your vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

## Switching Automatic High Beam Control On or Off

To switch the system on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Lighting	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Auto highbeam	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

## Automatic High Beam Indicator



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## Overriding Automatic High Beam Control

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

## GLARE-FREE HIGH BEAM



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

# Lighting



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system during inclement weather.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



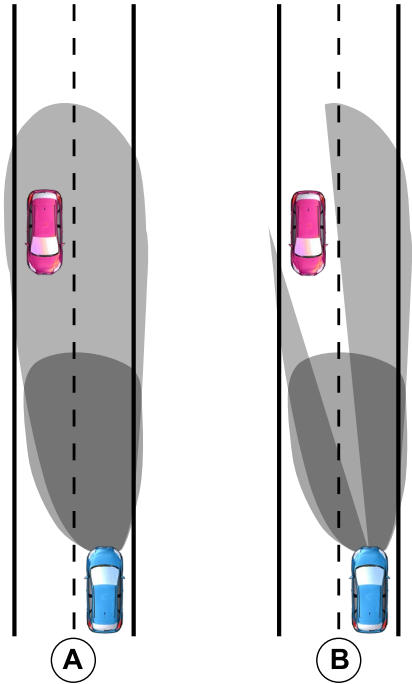
**WARNING:** The system may not adapt the high beams to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



**WARNING:** Inspect and replace the windshield wiper blades regularly to make sure the camera sensor has a clear view. The windshield wiper blades must be the correct length.

## About Glare-Free High Beam

The system is designed to prevent you from distracting other road users when the high beams are on.



A Normal High Beam.

B Glare-Free High Beam.

The system is designed to turn the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switched the system on in the information display.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that high beams are required.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

# Lighting

The system is designed to adapt the high beams to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switched the system on in the information display.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.



The high beam headlamp indicator remains on when the system adapts the high beams to avoid glare.

The system is designed to turn the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off in the information display.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- Your vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The deactivation speed is lower on curves.

## Switching Glare-Free High Beam On or Off

**To switch the system on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Lighting	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Auto Highbeam	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

## Glare-Free High Beam Indicator



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## Overriding Glare-Free High Beam

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

# Lighting

## FRONT FOG LAMPS



E210814

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

**Note:** Only use fog lamps during reduced visibility, for example, fog, snow or heavy rain.

**Note:** If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.

## REAR FOG LAMPS



E132710

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when either the front fog lamps or low beam headlamps are on.

**Note:** Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is less than 50 m (164 ft).

**Note:** Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing.

**Note:** If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.

## HEADLAMP LEVELING

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams, do the following:



E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.

**Note:** Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.



# Lighting

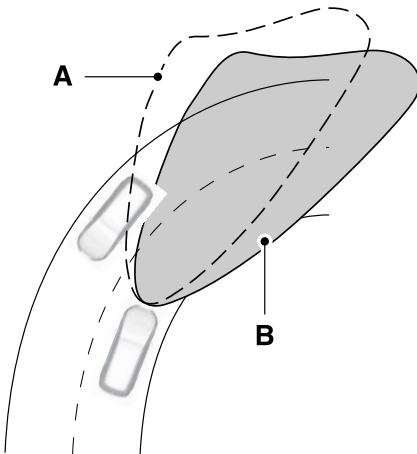
**Note:** Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

3. Press to close the control.

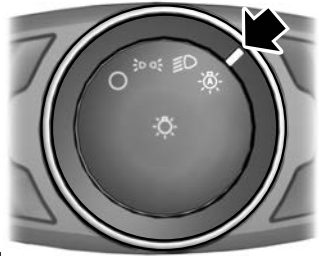
## ADAPTIVE HEADLAMPS

The headlamp beams move in the same direction as the steering wheel. This provides more visibility when driving around curves.

- A. Without adaptive headlamps
- B. With adaptive headlamps



The system will only work with the lighting control switch in the autolamp position.



E142451

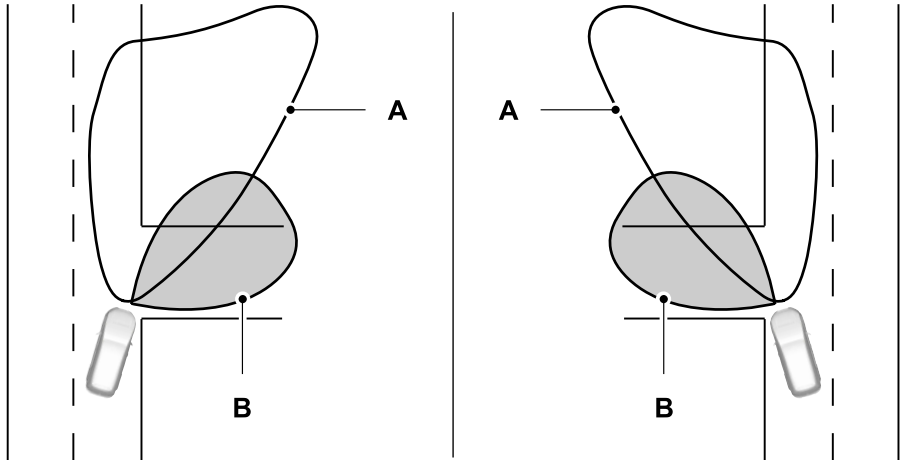
**Note:** There may be a delay of up to five seconds before the system will operate when the vehicle is first driven.

**Note:** The system is only active at speeds above 5 km/h (3 mph).

When the vehicle is started, the lamps track to a predetermined position, then back to center to alert the driver that the system is working properly.

# Lighting

## CORNERING LAMPS



E72898

- A Headlamp beam.
- B Cornering lamp beam.

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning the steering wheel.

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



E169255

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

# Lighting

---

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

**Note:** The indicator illuminates amber when the interior lamp function is off.

## INTERIOR LAMPS

### Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off



Press the button on the overhead console.

### Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off



Press the button on the overhead console.

### Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off

#### Second Row Interior Lamps



Press the button on the interior lamp.

#### Third Row Interior Lamps



Press the button on the interior lamp.

## Interior Lamp Function

When you switch the interior lamp function on, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open a door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You switch the ignition off.

### Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off




Press the button on the overhead console.


## AMBIENT LIGHTING

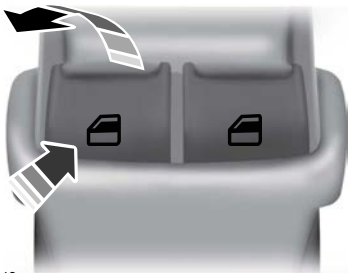
Adjust the ambient lighting using the touchscreen.

# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

 **WARNING:** When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E146043

Press the control to open the window.

Lift the control to close the window.

**Note:** You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

### One-Touch Down

Press the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up

Lift the control fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

### Resetting One-Touch Up

1. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the control.
3. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
4. Repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

### Window Lock




E195228

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It lights when the rear window controls lock.

### Bounce-Back

The window stops automatically while closing. It reverses some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

### Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

 **WARNING:** When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

# Windows and Mirrors

Pull up the window switch and hold within two seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The window stops if you release the switch before the window is fully closed.

## Accessory Delay

You can use the window controls for several minutes after switching off the ignition or until opening either front door.

## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

### Using Global Opening

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.

### Switching Global Opening On and Off

**To switch global opening on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Windows	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Remote	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

### Using Global Closing



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to open.

**Note:** *The moonroof stops in the vent position.*

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

**Note:** *You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.*

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

**Note:** *Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **Power Windows** (page 88).*

# Windows and Mirrors

## Switching Global Closing On and Off

To switch global closing on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Windows	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Remote	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power Exterior Mirrors



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



E195229

- A Left-hand mirror.
- B Adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror.

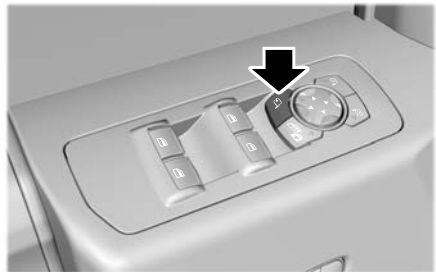
To adjust a mirror:

1. Press A or C to select the mirror you want to adjust. The control lights.
2. Press B to adjust the mirror's position.
3. Press the mirror control again. The light turns off.

### Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

### Power-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)



E195334

# Windows and Mirrors

To fold both mirrors, make sure you switch your vehicle on (with the ignition in accessory mode or the engine running) and then:

1. Press the control to fold the mirrors.
2. Press the control again to unfold.

**Note:** *Once you press the control, you cannot stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control again.*

## Auto-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)

**Note:** *The auto-fold mirrors operate only if they are in an unfolded position. If you folded the mirrors using the power-folding control, then you must unfold the mirrors using the power-folding control so the auto-fold feature can work.*

The mirrors fold automatically when you lock the vehicle. The mirrors unfold when you unlock the vehicle.

You can switch this feature on or off using the vehicle settings menu in the information display.

## Loose Mirror

If your power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if they:

- Vibrate while driving or feel loose.
- Do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.

To reset the power-fold feature:

1. Use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors.
2. When you hear one or both of the mirrors make a loud noise, it means that you reset the mirrors successfully. This noise is normal.
3. Repeat this process each time the mirrors are manually folded.

Even though the power-folding mirrors typically operate electronically, you can still fold and unfold them manually. After any manual adjustment, however, the power-folding mirrors become unsynchronized, even after repositioning them.

An unsynchronized mirror may:

- Not fold or unfold normally.
- Not stay in its set position.
- Feel loose or even vibrate at normal driving speeds.

You can reset the mirrors by doing the following:

1. Use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors.
2. When you hear one or both of the mirrors make a loud noise, it means that you reset the mirrors successfully. This noise is normal.
3. Repeat this process each time the power-folding mirrors fold or unfold manually.

## Reverse Mirror Dipping (If Equipped)

One of your exterior mirrors automatically dips down when you place your vehicle into reverse (R). This feature gives you a view of the curb.

To use, do the following:

1. Select a mirror using the power mirror control.
2. When you place your vehicle into reverse (R), the mirror automatically dips.

The exterior mirror automatically returns to its original position when:

- Your vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h (5 mph).
- Your vehicle is no longer in reverse (R).
- You switch the power mirror control off.

# Windows and Mirrors

## Setting a Reverse Mirror Dipping Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Select the mirror you want to adjust.
3. Put your vehicle into reverse (R).
4. Re-position the mirror to your preference.

**Note:** *If you have already programmed a position, wait for the mirror to stop its movement before re-positioning it.*

5. Use the memory preset control to save the position. See **Memory Function** (page 147).
6. Put your vehicle into park (P).

## Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 136).

## Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 147).

## Auto-Dimming Feature (If Equipped)

The driver exterior mirror automatically dims when the interior auto-dimming mirror turns on.

## Direction Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the direction indicator.

## Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 264).

## INTERIOR MIRROR

### Manual Dimming Mirror



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce the effect of bright light from behind.

### Automatic Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

**Note:** *A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.*

## CHILDMINDER MIRROR

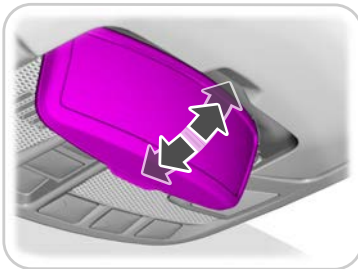
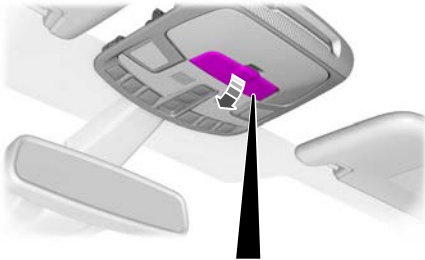
The mirror allows the driver to view the rear seating area.



# Windows and Mirrors



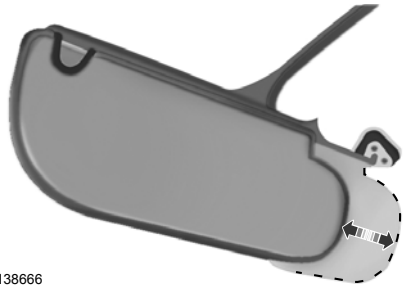
**WARNING:** Do not use the childminder mirror to view rearward traffic, do not allow rear passengers to distract you from the driving task, and make sure the rear view mirror has a clear view of rearward traffic. Failure to do so could increase the risk of a crash from an unseen vehicle, which may result in serious injury.



E190497

Pull down the rear edge of the childminder mirror to open. You can adjust the childminder mirror to any position up to full open to aid in visibility.

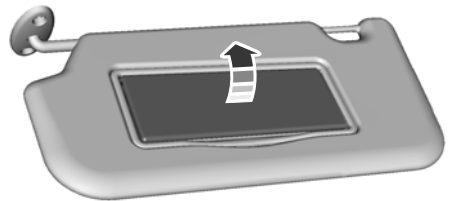
## SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

## Illuminated Vanity Mirror



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

## SUN SHADES - VEHICLES WITH: PANORAMIC ROOF PANEL



**WARNING:** Do not let children play with the sun shade or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

# Windows and Mirrors

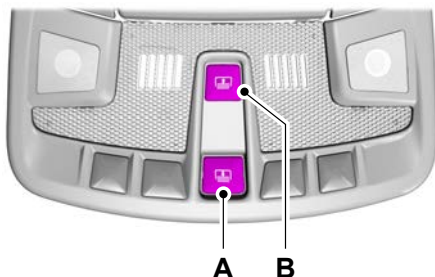


**WARNING:** When closing the sun shade, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the sunshade.

The controls are located in the overhead console.

The sun shade has a one-touch open and close feature. To stop motion during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

## Opening and Closing the Sun Shade



E193749

- A **Sunshade open.** Press and release to open the sun shade.
- B **Sunshade close.** Press and release to close the sun shade.

## Bounce-Back

The sun shade will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

## Sun Shade Relearning



**WARNING:** The bounce-back function is not active during this procedure. Make sure that there are no obstacles in the way of the moving sun shade.

**Note:** You must start the relearning process within 30 seconds of switching the ignition on.

In case the sun shade no longer opens or closes properly, follow this relearning procedure:

1. Press the **sunshade open** control to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.
2. Press the **sunshade close** control to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.
3. Press and hold the **sunshade open** control to the first action point, until the sun shade fully opens.
4. Press and hold the **sunshade close** control to the first action point, until the sun shade fully closes.

If you do not complete Step 2 within 15 seconds of Step 1, the relearning function ends. Switch the ignition off, wait for another 30 seconds and then switch the ignition back on again. Start the procedure again from the beginning.

Confirm that relearning was successful by opening and closing the sun shade.

# Windows and Mirrors

## MOONROOF- VEHICLES WITH: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL



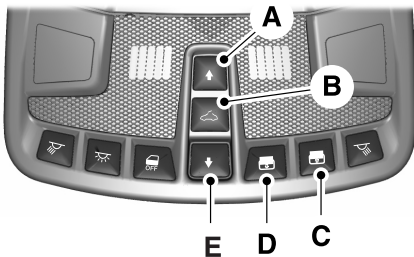
**WARNING:** Do not let children play with the moonroof or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.



**WARNING:** When closing the moonroof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof controls are located on the overhead console and have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop its movement during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

### Opening and Closing the Moonroof



E191272

- A **Moonroof open.** Press and release to open the moonroof. The moonroof stops short of the fully opened position. Press and release the control again to open the moonroof fully.
- B **Moonroof vent.** Press and release to vent the moonroof.

- C **Sunshade open.** Press and release to open the sunshade. The sunshade opens automatically with the moonroof. You can also open the sunshade with the moonroof closed. **Note:** The sunshade stops short of its fully opened position for the comfort of rear passengers. To open the sunshade fully, press the control again.
- D **Sunshade close.** Press and release to close the sunshade. If fully open, the sunshade stops after covering the rear glass panel. Press and release again to fully close the sunshade.
- E **Moonroof close.** Press and release to close the moonroof from either the open or vent positions.

### Bounce-Back

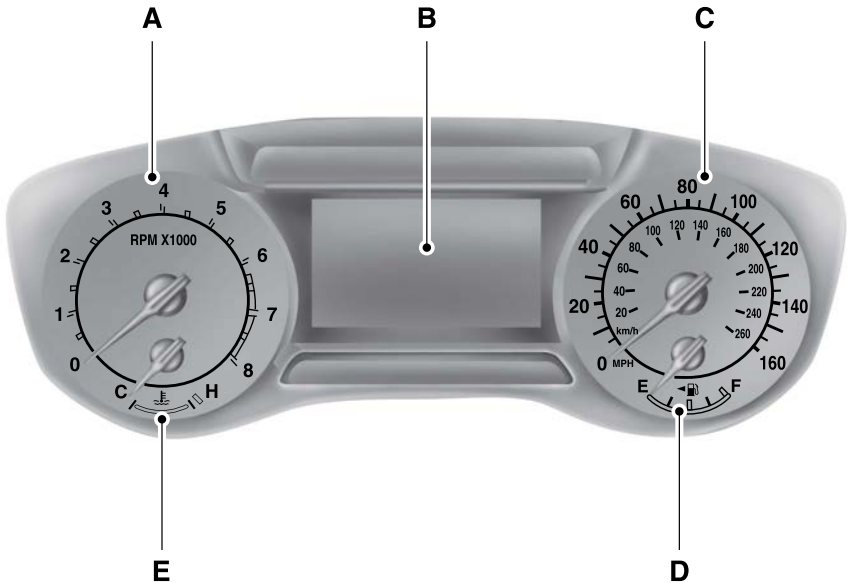
The moonroof automatically reverses some distance if an obstacle is detected while closing.

To override this feature, press and hold the **moonroof close** control within two seconds after the roof comes to a stop following a bounce-back reversal.

# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### Type 1

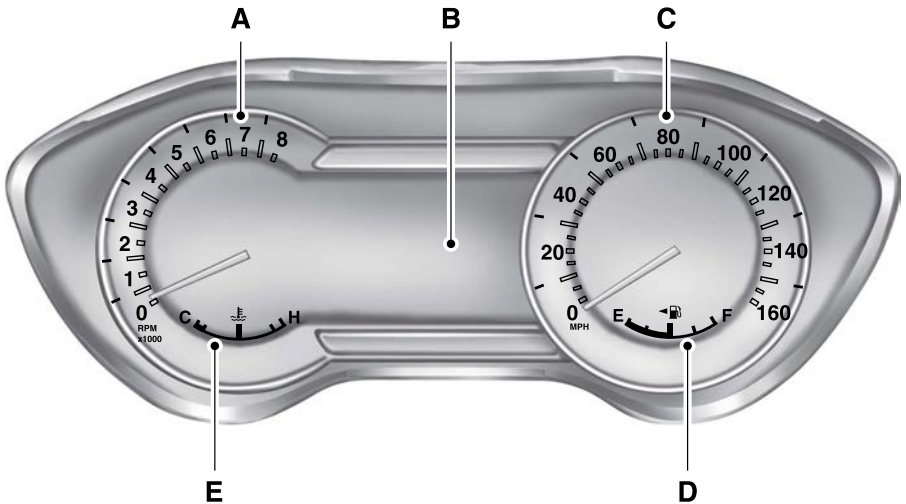


E144485

- A Tachometer.
- B Information display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Engine coolant temperature gauge.

# Instrument Cluster

## Type 2



E152749

- A Tachometer.
- B Information display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Engine coolant temperature gauge.

## Information Display

### Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display. Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

### Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

## Compass

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

## Trip Computer

See **General Information** (page 106).

## Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 106).

# Instrument Cluster

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

Shows the temperature of the engine coolant. At normal operating temperature, the needle remains in the center section. If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down.

**Note:** *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.*

## Fuel Gauge

**Note:** *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.*

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

### Variations:

Driving type (fuel economy conditions)	Fuel gauge position	Distance-to-empty
Highway driving	1/16th	56 km (35 mi) to 129 km (80 mi)
Severe duty driving (trailer towing, extended idle)	1/16th	56 km (35 mi)

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal:

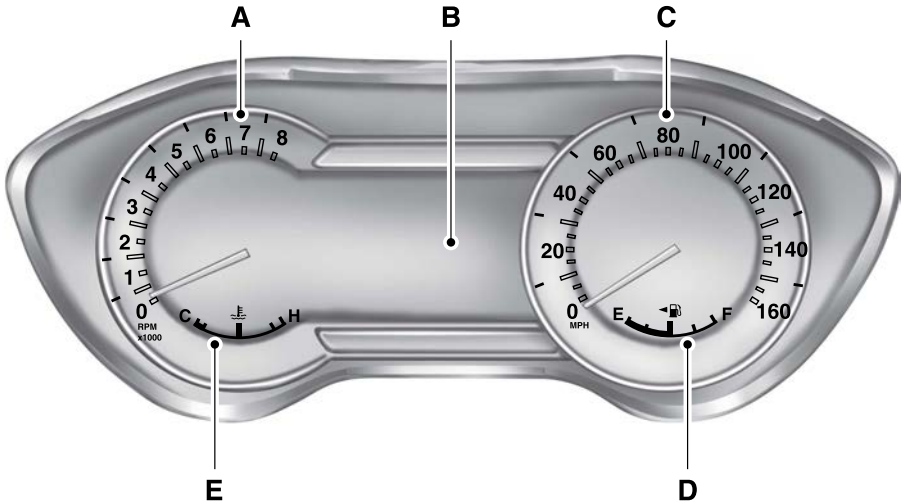
- It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

## Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers when the fuel gauge needle is at 1/16th.

# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



E152749

- A Tachometer.
- B Information display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Engine coolant temperature gauge.

### Information Display

#### Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display. Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

#### Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

#### Compass

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

# Instrument Cluster

## Brake Coach Display

The brake coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed is an indication of the regenerative braking efficiency with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovered.

This feature can be switched on or off in the information displays settings menu. See **General Information** (page 106).

## EV Coach Display

The EV Coach appears to show how your vehicle's electric driving and regenerative braking capabilities are used. When accelerating or maintaining speed a bar appears to indicate vehicle power.

- When the vehicle power bar is in the box, it indicates that the vehicle is in electric operation.
- When the vehicle power bar is outside of the box, it indicates that the vehicles is in hybrid operation.

During deceleration a bar appears to indicate the power used for slowing the vehicle.

- When the vehicle power bar is in the box, it indicates that the regenerative braking system is being used.
- When the vehicle power bar is outside of the box, it indicates that the vehicles is in hybrid operation.

This feature can be switched on or off in the information displays settings menu. See **General Information** (page 106).

## Trip Computer

See **General Information** (page 106).

## Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 106).

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Shows the temperature of the engine coolant. At normal operating temperature, the needle remains in the center section. If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down.

**Note:** *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.*

## Fuel Gauge

**Note:** *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.*

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal:



# Instrument Cluster

- It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

## Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If the fuel gauge icon illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

## Low Fuel Level Audible Warning

For MyKey users, a warning tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when the distance to empty reaches 120 km (75 mi).

For all keys, a warning tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when the distance to empty reaches 80 km (50 mi). A warning tone sounds and a message appears in the information display again at the following distance to empty parameters:

- 40 km (20 mi)
- 20 km (10 mi)
- 0 km (0 mi)

**Note:** *The low fuel reminder appears at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.*

## Adaptive Cruise Control (if Equipped)



The adaptive cruise control indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in: See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 241).

On (white light): Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is turned on. Turns off when the adaptive cruise control is turned off.

Engaged (green light): Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is engaged. Turns off when the adaptive cruise control is disengaged.

## Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without anti-lock braking system) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

# Instrument Cluster

## Automatic High Beam Lamp (If

Equipped)



Illuminates when this feature is on. See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 80).

## Battery Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

## Blind Spot Monitor Indicator (If

Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 264). See **Information Messages** (page 111).

## Brake System Warning Lamp



**WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

This lamp is a dual-function lamp and illuminates when:

- You apply the parking brake with the ignition on.
- Your vehicle has a brake fault or low brake fluid level, regardless of parking brake position.



If the lamp illuminates when you are moving, you may have the parking brake applied. Make sure the parking brake is off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible if the lamp continues to illuminate.

## Cruise Control (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch this feature on. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 240).

## Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burnt out bulb.

## Door Ajar



Illuminates when the vehicle is on and any door is not completely closed.

## Electric Park Brake



Illuminates when the electric parking brake has a malfunction.

## Engine Coolant Temperature



Illuminates when the engine or motor coolant temperature is high. Stop your vehicle as soon as possible and contact your authorized dealer.

## Engine Oil Warning Lamp



**WARNING:** If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.

# Instrument Cluster



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 329).

## Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain warning lamp. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a

malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



Illuminates and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder** (page 33).

## Front Airbag Warning Lamp



If the warning lamp does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled.

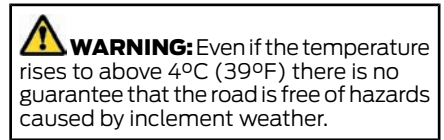
Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## Front Fog Lamps Indicator (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## Frost Warning Lamp



**WARNING:** Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C (39°F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



Illuminates when the outside air temperature is 39°F (4°C) or below.

## Fuel Operated Heater Enabled



Illuminates when you switch the fuel operated heater on.

# Instrument Cluster

## Fuel Operated Heater Operating



Illuminates to inform you the fuel operated heater is currently in operation.

## High Beam Indicator



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

## High Voltage Electric System Failure Warning Lamp.



It illuminates if your vehicle has an electrical component fault or failure that causes the vehicle to shutdown or enter into a limited operating mode. A message may appear in the information display.

## Hill Start Assist Indicator



Illuminates when the system is not available.

## Hood Ajar



Illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

## Lane Keeping Aid (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you activate the lane keeping system.

## Liftgate Ajar



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

## Low Beam Malfunction



Illuminates when there is a malfunction with the low beam headlamp bulb.

## Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning



Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

It will also light momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not light when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## Low Washer Fluid



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

## Headlamp and Parking Lamp Indicator



Illuminates when you switch the headlamps or parking lamps on.

## Rear Fog Lamps Indicator



Illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

# Instrument Cluster

## Shift Indicator



Illuminates to inform you that shifting to a higher or lower gear as indicated may give better fuel economy and lower CO2 emissions. It will not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when the clutch pedal is pressed.



## Speed Limiter



Illuminates when you switch on the speed limiter system. See **Speed Limiter** (page 256).

## Stability Control Warning Lamp



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. See **Using Stability Control** (page 223).

## Stability Control Off Indicator



Illuminates when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 223).

## Traffic Sign Recognition No Passing (If Equipped)



Illuminates when a no passing sign is detected by the traffic sign recognition system.

## Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Limit (If Equipped)



Illuminates when the current speed limit is detected by the traffic sign recognition system. If the traffic sign speed warning is enabled, the light flashes when you have exceeded the speed limit detected by the traffic sign recognition system.

## Water-In-Fuel (If Equipped)



Illuminates when there is excess water in the fuel filter. Drain off the water immediately.

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

### Key in Ignition Warning Chime

Sounds when you open the driver's door and you have left the key in the ignition.

### Keyless Warning Alert (If Equipped)

Sounds the horn twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key, after the last door is closed and your keyless vehicle is in RUN, indicating your vehicle is still on.

### Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

### Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

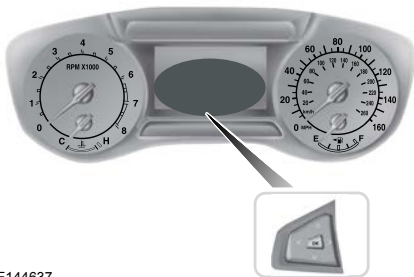


**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is not moving.

### Information Display Controls

#### Type 1



E144637

- Use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through a menu.
- Use the left arrow button to go back or to exit.

- Use the **OK** button to make a selection.
- Use the right arrow button to display the submenu.

Trip computer 1	
Trip computer 2	
Speed	
Dist to empty	
AdBlue Info	
AdBlue Range	
AdBlue Refill	
Trip odometer	
Trip timer	
Average fuel	
Outside temp	
All values	Dist to empty
	Trip odometer
	Trip timer
	Average fuel

Fuel economy	
Dist to empty	
Instant fuel	
Average fuel	
Fuel history	
Average speed	
All values	Dist to empty
	Instant fuel

# Information Displays

<b>Fuel economy</b>	
	Average fuel
	Average speed
Auto StartStop	

<b>Driver assist</b>	
Tyre monitor	Tyre pressure
	Reset
Trailer control	

<b>Driver assist</b>	
Traction control	
BLIS	
Cross traffic alert	
Cruise control	
Driver alert	
Select. susp.	Sport
	Normal
	Comfort
Hill start assist	
Intelligent AWD	
Lane keeping	Mode
	Intensity
Pre-collision	Alert sensitivity
	Dist. indication
	Active braking
Rear Park Pilot	
Speed limiter	Manual
	Intelligent
	Tolerance
Traffic signs	Display
	Always shown
	Speed minder

<b>Settings</b>	
Vehicle settings	Alarm
	Auto engine off
	Chimes
	DTE calculation
	Easy entry/exit
	Lighting
	KeyFree
	Locks
	Power mirror
	Oil life reset
	Park heater
	Park lock ctrl
	Power liftgate
	Seatbelts
	Silent mode
	Windows
	Wipers
MyKey	Create MyKey
	Emerg. Assist.
	Do not disturb
	Traction control
	Max speed

# Information Displays

Settings	
	Speed minder
	Volume limit
	Clear MyKeys
Display	Units
	Temp unit
	Tyre pressure
	Language

Trip computer
Trip computer 1
Trip computer 2
AdBlue Info
AdBlue Range
AdBlue Level

Fuel economy
Fuel economy
Fuel history
Average speed
Auto StartStop

Driver assist	
Traction control	
Adaptive steering	
BLIS	
Cross traffic alert	
Cruise control	
Driver alert	
Hill start assist	
Intelligent AWD	
Lane keeping	Mode
	Intensity
Pre-collision Assist	Alert sensitivity
	Distance indication
	Active braking
Rear Park Pilot	

## Type 2



E182848

- Use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through a menu.
- Use the left arrow button to go back or to exit.
- Use the **OK** button to make a selection.
- Use the right arrow button to display the submenu.



# Information Displays

Driver assist	
Tyre monitor	Tyre pressure
	Hold OK to reset
Speed limiter	Manual
	Intelligent
	Tolerance
Traffic signs	Display
	Always shown
	Speed warning
Trailer control	

Settings	
Vehicle	Alarm system
	Drive control
	DTE calculation
	Chimes
	Easy entry/exit
	Auto engine off
	Lighting
	KeyFree
	Locks
	Mirrors
	Oil life
	Park heater
	Park lock control
	Power liftgate
	Seatbelts
Windows	

Settings	
	Wipers
MyKey	Create MyKey
	Emergency Assistance
	Do not disturb
	Traction control
	Max speed
	Speed minder
	Volume limit
	Clear MyKeys
Display	Measure unit
	Temperature unit
	Tyre pressure
	Language

## GENERAL INFORMATION - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

# Information Displays

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is not moving.



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is not moving.

## Information Display Controls



E182848

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through a menu.
- down
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.

- Press the **OK** button.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a submenu.

Trip computer
Trip computer 1
Trip computer 2

Fuel economy
Fuel economy
Ev Coach
Average speed

Driver assist	
Traction control	
Adaptive steering	
BLIS	
Cross traffic alert	
Cruise control	
Driver alert	
Hill start assist	
Lane keeping	Mode
	Intensity
Pre-collision Assist	Alert sensitivity
	Distance indication
	Active braking
Rear Park Pilot	
Tyre monitor	Tyre pressure
	Hold OK to reset
Speed limiter	Manual

# Information Displays

<b>Driver assist</b>	
	Intelligent
	Tolerance
Traffic signs	Display
	Always shown
	Speed warning

<b>Settings</b>	
Vehicle	Alarm system
	Drive control
	DTE calculation
	Chimes
	Easy entry/exit
	Auto engine off
	Lighting
	KeyFree
	Locks
	Mirrors
	Oil life
	Park heater
	Park lock control

<b>Settings</b>	
	Power liftgate
	Seatbelts
	Windows
	Wipers
MyKey	Create MyKey
	Emergency Assistance
	Do not disturb
	Traction control
	Max speed
	Speed minder
	Volume limit
Display	Clear MyKeys
	Measure unit
	Temperature unit
	Tyre pressure
	Language
	Fuel history
Brake Coach	

## INFORMATION MESSAGES

### Active Park Assist

<b>Message</b>	<b>Description</b>
Active Park malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Description
Adaptive cruise malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Adaptive cruise not available	The system is not available. See <b>Using Adaptive Cruise Control</b> (page 241).
Adaptive cruise not available Sensor blocked See manual	The radar has reduced visibility. See <b>Using Adaptive Cruise Control</b> (page 241).
Cruise control active Automatic braking turned off	You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.
Front sensor not aligned	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Adaptive cruise Driver resume control	The adaptive cruise has reinstated controls to the driver.
Adaptive cruise Speed too low to activate	Your vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise.
Adaptive cruise Shift down	The adaptive cruise is adjusting the gap distance. Shift into a lower gear.

## Airbag

Message	Description
Occupant sensor blocked Remove objects near passenger seat	The system has malfunctioned due to a blocked sensor. Remove blockage.

## Alarm

Message	Description
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Alarm triggered due to unauthorized entry. See <b>Anti-Theft Alarm</b> (page 66).

# Information Displays

## All-Wheel Drive

Message	Description
AWD temporarily disabled	The system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD off	The system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if you are using the temporary spare tire.
AWD restored	The system resumes normal function and clears this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
AWD malfunction Service required	The system is not properly operating. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Automatic Engine Shutdown

Message	Description
Engine stops in {seconds to shut off:#0} seconds	The engine is getting ready to shut off.
Engine stops for fuel economy	The engine has shut off to help increase fuel economy.
Engine stops in {seconds to shut off:#0} seconds OK = override	The engine is getting ready to shut off. You can press OK on the left steering wheel button to override the shut down.

## Automatic High Beam Control

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Auto-Start-Stop

Message	Description
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Press the clutch pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Press any pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Shift into neutral (N) to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Shift into park (P) to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning. Restart the engine.
Auto StartStop not available	The system is not available. See <b>What Is Auto-Start-Stop</b> (page 178).
Auto StartStop malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert Systems

Message	Description
BLIS malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	The system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 264).
Vehicle coming from left Vehicle coming from right	The system detects a vehicle. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 264).
Cross Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	The system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 264).
Cross traffic system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Brake System

Message	Description
Check brake system	The system has malfunctioned. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Diesel Engine

Message	Description
Engine warming Please wait {seconds:00} seconds	In extremely cold weather, typically below -26°C (-15°F) and if the engine block heater is not utilized, the engine does not respond to accelerator pedal movement for 30 seconds. This restriction allows the engine to circulate the oil properly in order to avoid engine damage.

## Doors and Locks

Message	Description
Driver door open Passenger door open Rear left door open Rear right door open Liftgate open	The door listed is not completely closed.
Boot open	The luggage compartment is not completely closed.
Bonnet open	The hood is not completely closed.
Switches inhibited Security mode	The system has disabled the door switches.
Child lock malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Driver Alert

Message	Description
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Take a break due to low alertness levels.
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	We recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.

## Electric Parking Brake

Message	Description
Park brake malfunction Service now	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake not released Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System over-heated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake Press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the electric parking brake.
Park brake applied	The electric parking brake is applied.
Park brake released	The electric parking brake is released.



# Information Displays

## Engine

Message	Description
Engine coolant overtemperature	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reduced engine power	The engine has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Stop safely now	The engine has malfunctioned. Stop your vehicle as soon as possible. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Fuel System

Message	Description
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check fuel fill inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Fuel pressure low	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Water in fuel Drain filter	The system detects there is excess water in the fuel filter. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Fuel door opening	Wait for up to 15 seconds if the fuel system depressurizes.
Fuel door open	The fuel system has finished depressurizing and you can begin to refuel.
Close fuel door	A reminder to close the fuel door.
Refuel error See manual	There is an error in attempting to refill your vehicle.

## Hill Start Assist

Message	Description
Hill start assist not available	The system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See <b>Hill Start Assist</b> (page 220).

# Information Displays

## High Voltage Battery

Message	Description
In neutral depletes HV battery. Shift out of neutral for full vehicle function.	Displays when in neutral (N) gear with the vehicle on. Shift out of neutral to maintain full vehicle function.
Stop safely now	Displays when a malfunction occurs in the high voltage electric system. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Lane Keeping System

Message	Description
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests you to keep your hands on the steering wheel.

# Information Displays

## Maintenance

Message	Description
Engine oil level low Add oil	The engine oil level is low. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 329). If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Engine oil pressure low	The engine oil pressure is low. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 329). If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Change engine oil soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 329).
Oil change required	The oil life left is at 0%. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 329).
Brake fluid level low	The brake fluid level is low or the brake system has malfunctioned. See <b>Brake Fluid Check</b> (page 332). Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Power reduced to lower engine temperature	The engine has reduced power to help reduce high engine temperature.
Transport mode Contact dealer	Transport mode is on. This may not allow some features to properly operate. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Factory mode Contact dealer	Factory mode is on. This may not allow some features to properly operate. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## MyKey

Message	Description
MyKey not created	The system fails to create a MyKey.
MyKey active Drive safely	You are using a MyKey.
Speed limited to {my key limit metric:##0} km/h Speed limited to {my key limit imperial:##0} mph	MyKey speed limit is on.

## Information Displays

Message	Description
Check speed Drive safely	You are using a MyKey and the MyKey speed limit is on.
Vehicle near top speed	You are using a MyKey and your vehicle speed is approaching the MyKey speed limit.
MyKey Vehicle at top speed	You have reached the MyKey speed limit.
Buckle up to unmute audio	You are using a MyKey and your seatbelt is not fastened. Fasten your seatbelt to unmute audio.

### Parking Aid

Message	Description
Check front Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check rear Park Pilot	

### Pre-Collision Assist

Message	Description
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	The system sensors are blocked. See <b>Pre-Collision Assist</b> (page 270).

### Remote Control

Message	Description
Key battery low Replace soon	The key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Seats

Message	Description
Memory recall not permitted while driving	Memory seats are not available when driving.
Memory {0} saved	Displays where you have saved your memory setting.

## Selective Catalytic Reductant System

### Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue) Level

Message	Description
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon	Refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank as soon as possible. See <b>Selective Catalytic Reductant System</b> (page 196).
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX mls Refill soon	
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km	
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls	
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	The diesel exhaust fluid tank is empty. Refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank. The minimum AdBlue refill quantity required to restart the engine is 5 L (1.1 gal). See <b>Selective Catalytic Reductant System</b> (page 196).

### Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue) System Malfunction

Message	Description
AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls	
AdBlue® system malfunction Service required	
AdBlue® system Service required to start engine	

# Information Displays

## Stability Control

Message	Description
ESC Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Starting System

Message	Description
Full accessory power active	Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.
Press brake to start	A reminder to press the brake pedal when starting your vehicle.
Press clutch to start	A reminder to press the clutch pedal when starting your vehicle.
Press brake and clutch to start	A reminder to press the brake and clutch pedals when starting your vehicle.
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if your vehicle fails to start.
No key detected	The system does not detect a valid passive key inside your vehicle. See <b>Push Button Ignition Switch</b> (page 164).
Starting system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Restart now or key is needed	Displays if you switch the engine off and the system does not detect a valid passive key inside your vehicle.
Engine start pending Please wait	The starter is attempting to start your vehicle.
Pending start cancelled	The system has cancelled the pending start.

# Information Displays

## Steering System

Message	Description
Steering loss Stop safely	The system has malfunctioned. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering malfunction Service now	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Description
Tyre pressure low	One or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure.
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	The system has malfunctioned or the spare tire is in use. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Towing

Message	Description
Trailer sway Reduce speed	Your trailer sway control has detected trailer sway. Reduce your speed.
Tow bar unlocked Towing prohibited See manual	Swivel the tow ball arm again. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See <b>Tow Ball</b> (page 286).
Tow bar malfunction Towing prohibited Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tow bar not activated Start engine and retry	The vehicle battery may not have a full charge. Start the engine, and then swivel the tow ball arm. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See <b>Tow Ball</b> (page 286).
Tow bar extended Check trailer wiring	Check the trailer wiring. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Traction Control

Message	Description
Spinout detected Hazards activated	A spinout has occurred and the hazard flashers are on.

## Transmission

Message	Description
Transmission malfunction Service now Transmission Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission overtemperature Stop safely Transmission overheating Stop safely Transmission too hot Press brake	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow the transmission to cool. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



## Information Displays

<b>Message</b>	<b>Description</b>
Transmission limited function See manual	The transmission has limited functionality. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission warming up Please wait	Displays at low outside temperatures, if it takes a few seconds for the transmission to engage a gear. Fully press the brake pedal until the message disappears from the information display.
Transmission not in Park	A reminder to shift into park (P).
Press brake pedal	Press the brake pedal to unlock the transmission.
Transmission Adapt-Mode	The transmission is adjusting the shift strategy.
Transmission adjusted	The transmission has adjusted the shift strategy.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup on	The transmission is locked.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup off	The transmission is unlocked.
Park will engage at low speed	The transmission prepares to shift into park (P) when you reach a certain speed.
Stay in neutral mode Press brake to unlock shifter	Press the brake pedal to unlock the transmission.
Select S to confirm Stay in neutral mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Sport not available in selected gear	The transmission cannot shift into sport (S) in the current gear.
Invalid gear selection	Displays when you shift into an invalid gear at a certain speed.

# Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

## WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

## REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The ignition is on.

**Note:** Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

## ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Switch **System** on.

**Note:** To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 376).

## REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

**Note:** The turn signal lamps flash twice.

**Note:** The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

**Note:** The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

**Note:** All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

**Note:** You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

**Note:** The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

**Note:** A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

## REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

### Climate Control Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Climate control**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

**Note:** If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

**Note:** If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

# Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

**Note:** You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the engine.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

## Heated Seat Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Front seats**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

**Note:** If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the engine.

## Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Duration**.

## REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

### Climate Control Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.

4. Select **Climate control**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

**Note:** If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

**Note:** If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the engine.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

### Heated Seat and Steering Wheel Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Front seats & steer.**
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

**Note:** If you switch the heated seat and steering wheel settings to **Auto**, the heated seats and steering wheel turn on during cold weather.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the heated seat and steering wheel settings when you have remotely started the engine.

### Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Duration**.

# Climate Control

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: SONY AUDIO SYSTEM

**Note:** You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 409).



E273937

- A **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.  
**Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.
- B **MAX A/C:** Press the button for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.
- C **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

# Climate Control

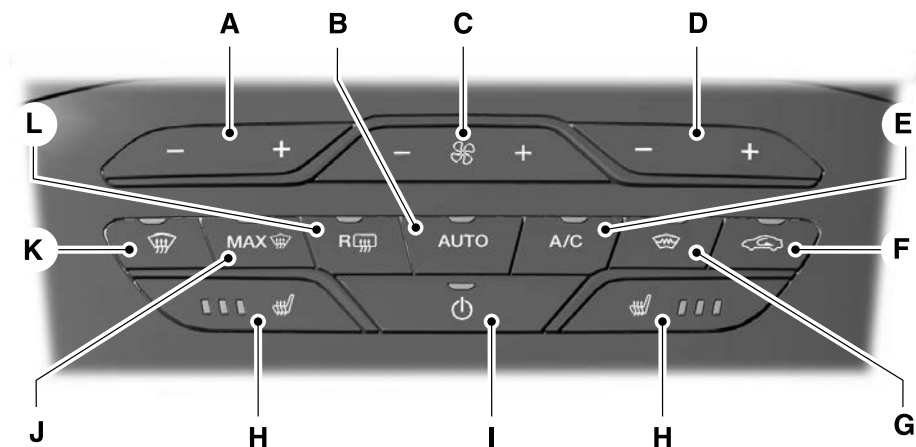
---

- Note:** Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.
- D **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- E **Heated seats:** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 156).
- F **Right-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature on the right-hand side.  
**Note:** The maximum difference between left-hand and right-hand settings may be limited. Whenever you make an adjustment that would result in a larger difference, both settings will change together.
- G **Climate controlled seats:** Press the button to switch the climate controlled seats on and off. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 156).
- H **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- I **Left-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting using the control on the left-hand side. This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.
- J **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 136).
- K **Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
- L **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.  
**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- M **AUTO:** Press the button to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for more than two seconds.

# Climate Control

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: PREMIUM AM/FM/CD

**Note:** You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 409).



E188723

- A **Left-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting on the left-hand side. This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.
- B **AUTO:** Press to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding for more than two seconds.
- C **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- D **Right-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting on the right-hand side.

**Note:** The maximum difference between left-hand and right-hand settings may be limited. If you make an adjustment that would result in a larger difference, both settings change together.

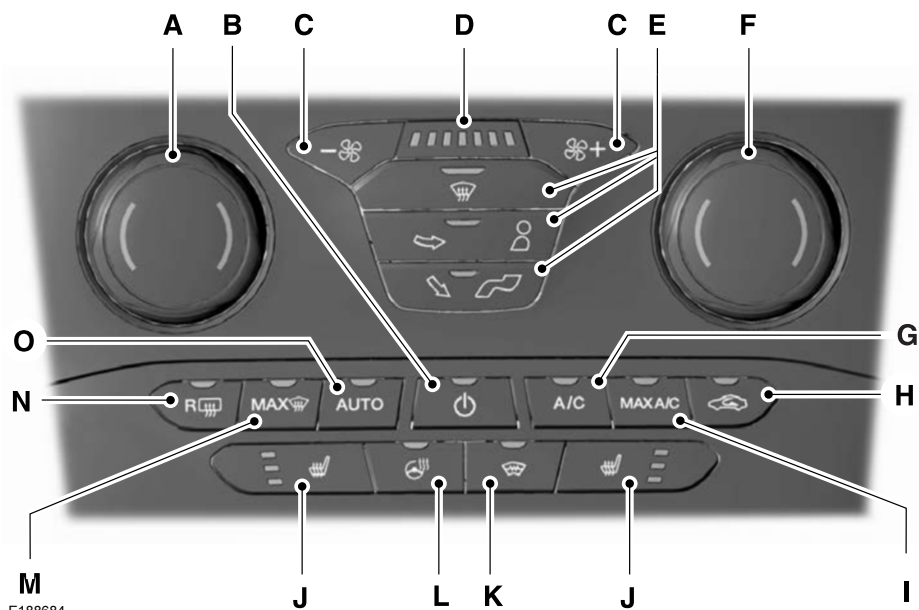
# Climate Control

---

- E **A/C:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.
- Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.
- F **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- Note:** Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.
- G **Heated windshield:** Press to clear the heated windshield of thin ice and fog. See **Heated Windshield** (page 137).
- H **Heated seats:** Press to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 156).
- I **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- J **MAX Defrost:** Press to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, the air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.
- Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- K **Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
- L **Heated rear window:** Press to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 136).

# Climate Control

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD



E188684

- A **Left-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting using the control on the left-hand side. This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.
- B **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- C **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- D **Fan speed indicator:** Illuminates to indicate fan speed.
- E **Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.
- F **Right-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature on the right-hand side.



# Climate Control

---

- G A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.
- Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.
- H Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- Note:** Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.
- I MAX A/C:** Press the button for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.
- J Heated seats:** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 156).
- K Heated windshield:** Press the button to clear the heated windshield of thin ice and fog. See **Heated Windshield** (page 137).
- L Heated steering wheel:** Press the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.
- M MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.
- Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- N Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 136).
- O AUTO:** Press the button to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for more than two seconds.

# Climate Control

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

### General Hints

**Note:** Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

**Note:** Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

**Note:** Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

**Note:** To improve the time to reach comfort in hot weather, drive with the windows fully open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

### Manual Climate Control

**Note:** To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position.

### Automatic Climate Control

**Note:** Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the cabin to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

**Note:** If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs airflow to the windshield and side window vents. In addition, the fan may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.

**Note:** If you select **AUTO** during hot outside temperatures, or when the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system automatically uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. When the interior reaches the selected temperature, the system automatically switches to using outside air.

## Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to a high speed setting.	Press the <b>AUTO</b> button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

# Climate Control

## Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the <b>AUTO</b> button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

## Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the temperature control to the <b>MAX A/C</b> position.	Press the <b>MAX A/C</b> button.
2	Drive with the windows fully open until you feel cold air through the air vents.	Drive with the windows fully open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the <b>AUTO</b> button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the instrument panel air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

# Climate Control

## Window Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Press the defrost button.	Press the defrost button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	

## REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROLS

### Adjusting the Blower Motor Speed



### Directing Air to the Overhead Air Vents



### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



### Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off



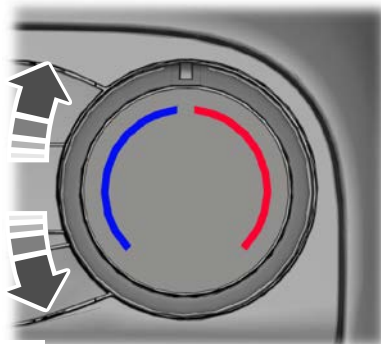
Repeatedly press the button to adjust the temperature or to switch the heated seats off.

## Rear Passenger Climate Control Lock Indicator



Illuminates when you lock the rear passenger climate controls using SYNC. See **Climate** (page 399).

## Adjusting the Temperature



E258255

## HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

**Note:** Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.

# Climate Control

## Heated Rear Window



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time. Press the button again to switch it off.

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

## Heated Exterior Mirror (If Equipped)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

## HEATED WINDSHIELD



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Make sure that the engine is running before switching the heated windshield on.

**Note:** The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

## AUXILIARY HEATER



**WARNING:** We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the fuel-operated parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. This could result in serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options, your vehicle may not come equipped with a remote transmitter.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

Used correctly the system will:

- Keep the windows clear of ice in the event of frost and prevent condensation.
- Avoid cold starts to assist the engine to reach operating temperature sooner.

**Note:** Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, behind the right front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud, and any other blockages to avoid issues with heater operation.

**Note:** The time and date on your vehicle's clock must be set correctly.

## Programming the Fuel-Operated Parking Heater (If Equipped)

### Principles of Operation

Each mode is an independent operation and has its own duration. The heater may run or continue running for any of the modes in an overlapping manner. Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 106).

**Note:** If you request the heater to start and it does not respond with the ignition off, an explanation may appear in the information display when you switch the ignition on.

# Climate Control

---

## Heater Modes

**Note:** For you to program and enable any timer mode, you must check all pertinent boxes in the information display menu. This includes the box for the programming level menu and the box(es) for applicable heater mode menus.

**Note:** The system chooses AM, PM or the 24-hour clock based on the preference you choose in the information display.

## Automatic Mode

The system automatically enables the heater mode, not by user request. The heater starts automatically if the engine is running and if other conditions are satisfied within a few seconds after you start the engine. The heater may cycle on and off based on the coolant temperature during the entire drive cycle. Before you start a petrol engine, you may need to set the climate controls to a heating mode. See **Climate Control** (page 128).

After the engine starts, the only two ways the user can disable this specific heater mode are to switch the engine off or press the off button on the transmitter.

## One Time Mode

Allows you to perform one heating cycle for a specific day. If conditions permit, the heater starts within 30 minutes prior to the set day and time to attempt to heat the cabin.

## Time 1 and Time 2 Modes

There are two programmable timers available. Each timer mode allows you to set different heating cycles for each day of the week. These times remain stored and the system warms up your vehicle according to the timer mode selected.

## Continue Heat Mode

If you check this box in the cluster menu, as soon as you switch the ignition off the heater starts or continues running if conditions permit. The heater continues running in this mode regardless of future ignition cycles for up to 30 minutes.

You can start the heater immediately by checking the Continue Heat box and switching the engine off and on.

**Note:** You can use this mode to maintain a warm cabin after you switch the ignition off. After the heater completes this mode, the cluster menu resets to unchecked.

## Remote Transmitter Mode

**Note:** Protect the transmitter from moisture and water, strong impact, and direct sunlight to provide the longest useful lifetime.

The fuel-operated parking heater transmitter allows the user to remotely request the heater to start and run for up to 30 minutes or to stop all heater modes upon demand, regardless of ignition status or engine status.

To request the heater to start using the remote transmitter: Press and hold the On or Heat button on the transmitter until a green LED light illuminates on the transmitter. If the ignition is off for up to 10 seconds during a pre-start evaluation period, the information display provides indications that the park heater is running. However, if conditions do not permit the heater to start, the indications disappear. If you switch the ignition off before 30 minutes have lapsed, the heater stops automatic mode but keeps running the remainder of the remote transmitter mode.

# Climate Control

---

To request the heater to stop all modes by remote transmitter: Press and hold the Off button on the transmitter for a few seconds until a red LED light illuminates on the transmitter. This applies only for the heater mode running at the present time. Future Timer settings or future Continue Heat settings do not disable.

**Note:** *The LED light on the remote transmitter does not indicate the actual status of the heater. The light does not guarantee the heater received a signal to start or stop.*

After you press and hold the On or Heat button for a few seconds:

- Solid Green: Indicates the transmitter sent a radio signal.
- Flashing Green: Indicates the transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.
- Solid Orange (2 seconds) then Solid Green (2 seconds): Indicates the transmitter sent the radio signal, but the battery is weak.
- Solid Orange (2 seconds) then Flashing Green (2 seconds): Indicates the transmitter did not send a radio signal due to a weak battery.
- Flashing Orange: Indicates a low transmitter battery.

After you press and hold the Off button for a few seconds:

- Solid Red: Indicates the transmitter successfully sent an off signal.
- Flashing Red: Indicates the transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.
- Solid Orange (2 seconds) then Solid Red (2 seconds): Indicates the transmitter sent the radio signal, but the battery is weak.

- Solid Orange (2 seconds) then Flashing Red (2 seconds): Indicates the transmitter did not send a radio signal due to a weak battery.
- Flashing Orange: Indicates a low transmitter battery.

**Note:** *The maximum range of the transmitter signal is about 300 meters. Electronic devices that operate in the same frequency may affect the range.*

**Note:** *Up to three transmitters can be paired to your vehicle.*

## General Requirements

**Ambient Air Temperature:** The heater may start by Automatic Mode only if the ambient air temperature is below 5°C (41°F). For other heater modes, the heater may start only if the ambient air temperature is below 10°C (50°F) for petrol-fueled vehicles and below 15°C (59°F) for diesel-fueled vehicles.

**Note:** *If you own a petrol-fueled vehicle, and you do not operate the heater for an extended number of days, it is possible that the heater may require more than one start attempt due to fuel evaporation.*

**Note:** *If you own a diesel-fueled vehicle, it is necessary to use a low temperature fuel to effectively operate the heater in extremely cold temperatures.*

**Battery State of Charge:** The vehicle battery must be at least 60% charged for the heater to start. An older or weakened vehicle battery may also result in issues. If you connect a battery charger to the vehicle battery and it provides excessive voltage generally more than 15.5 volts, then the heater may not be able to start or it may stop running.

**Fuel Level:** The heater may not start if the fuel level is low or parking your vehicle on a steep hill.

# Climate Control

---

**Coolant Temperature:** The heater starts and stops automatically. The coolant temperature target the heater is trying to reach is 80°C (176°F).

**Time:** All heater modes, except for Automatic Mode, are limited to a maximum 30 minute duration each. You can attempt a re-start using the remote transmitter after you switch the heater off.

**Information:** The engine start-stop function does not affect the heater operation and is not considered an engine off state for heater operation purposes.

## Switching Off or Disabling the Heater

Before re-fueling your vehicle:

- Uncheck all of the heater boxes in the information display menu.
- Switch off the engine.
- Press and hold the Off button on the transmitter until a red LED light illuminates on the transmitter.
- Place the transmitter in a secure location.

**Note:** *The heater turns off when you switch the engine off. A message does not appear in the information display, there is no noise from the heater and no exhaust from the heater exhaust pipe.*

**Note:** *While the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise for up to 3 minutes.*



# Seats

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



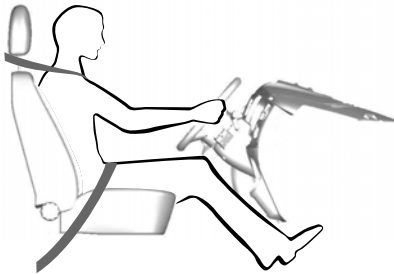
**WARNING:** Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degree from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied.

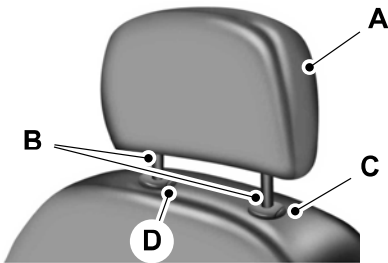
# Seats



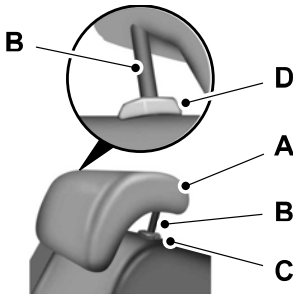
**WARNING:** Install the head restraint properly to help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

**Note:** Adjust the seatback to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

## Front seat head restraints



## Rear seat outboard and center head restraints



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

## Adjusting the Head Restraint

### Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

### Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

### Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

### Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until in locks.

### Tilting Head Restraints (If Equipped)

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:

# Seats



1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

## MANUAL SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: 4-WAY MANUAL SEAT



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

The manual front seats may consist of:



E144631

- A A bar to move the seat backward and forward.
- B A rotary control to adjust the lumbar of the seat backrest.
- C A lever to adjust the height of the seat.
- D A lever or rotary control to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.

## MANUAL SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: 8-WAY MANUAL SEAT



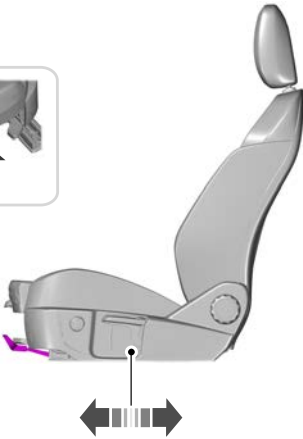
**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

# Seats

## Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

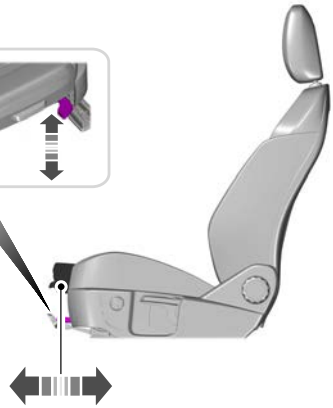
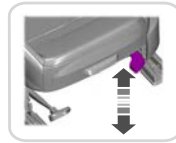


**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



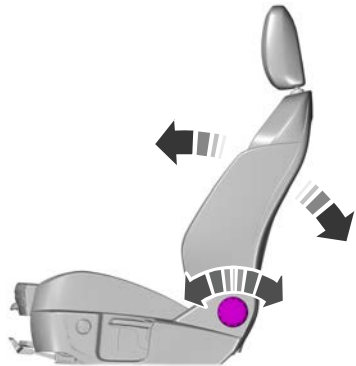
E265510

## Adjusting the Seat Cushion



E265511

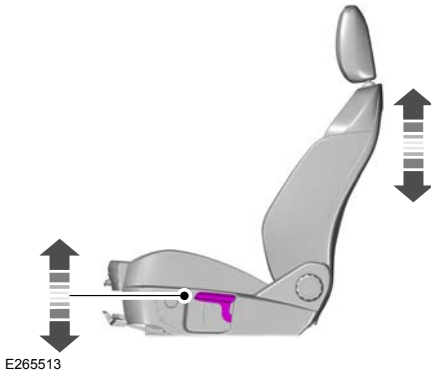
## Adjusting the Seat Backrest



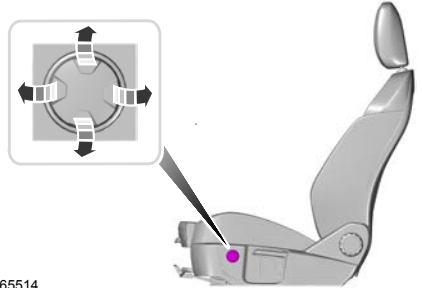
E265512

# Seats


## Adjusting the Seat Height




## Adjusting the Lumbar Support

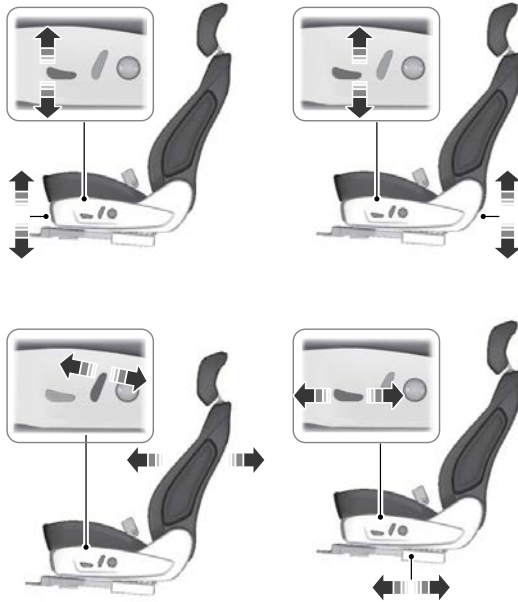


## POWER SEATS

 **WARNING:** Do not adjust the front seat or seatback while your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

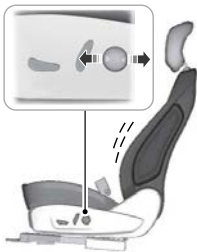
 **WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

# Seats



E144632

## Power Lumbar



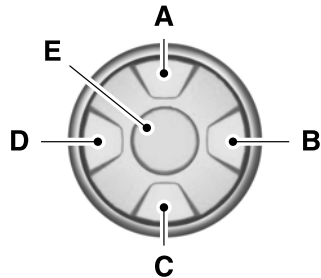
E165608

## Multi-Contour Front Seats With Active Motion (If Equipped)

**Note:** The massage system will turn off after 20 minutes.

**Note:** The engine must be running or the vehicle must be in accessory mode to activate the seats.

**Note:** Allow a few seconds for any selection to activate. The seatback and cushion massage cannot function at the same time.



# Seats

	<b>Massage mode</b>	<b>Lumbar and bolster mode</b>
A	Back massage intensity adjustment	Upper lumbar
B	Massage intensity decrease and off*	Lumbar decrease
C	Cushion massage intensity adjustment	Lower lumbar**
D	Massage intensity increase	Lumbar increase
E	On and off	-

\*The massage feature will default to an alternating massage mode with back massage intensity adjustment. The lumbar and bolster feature will default to the middle lumbar mode.

\*\*Press C a second time to adjust the back bolster. Press C a third time to adjust the cushion bolster.

You can also adjust this feature through the touchscreen.



Press the Menu Settings icon, then Vehicle. Choose Multi-Contour Seats.

When switched on, the system displays directions for you to adjust the lumbar settings in your seat or to set the massage function.

To access and make adjustments to the lumbar setting:

1. Choose the desired seat to adjust.
2. Press the + or - to adjust the lumbar intensity.

To access and make adjustments to the massage setting:

1. Press the Menu Settings icon, then Vehicle. Choose Multi-Contour Seats.
2. Choose the desired seat to adjust.
3. Press OFF, LO or HI.

## MEMORY FUNCTION



**WARNING:** Before activating the seat memory, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



**WARNING:** Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

This feature automatically recalls the position of the driver seat, power mirrors and optional power steering column. The memory control is on the driver door.

# Seats



## Saving a PreSet Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the seat, exterior mirrors and steering column to your desired position.
3. Press and hold the desired preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions. You can save a memory preset at any time.

## Recalling a Preset Position

Press and release the preset button associated with your desired driving position. The seat, mirrors and steering column move to the position stored for that preset.

**Note:** You can only recall a preset memory position when the ignition is off, or when the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) (and your vehicle is not moving) if the ignition is on.

You can also recall a preset memory position by:

- Pressing the unlock button on your integrated keyhead transmitter or keyless entry key fob if it is linked to a preset position.

**Note:** Using a linked key fob to recall your memory position when the ignition is off moves the seat to the Easy Entry position.

**Note:** Pressing any active memory feature adjustment control – power seat, mirror or steering column switch (or any memory button) during a memory recall, cancels the operation.

## Linking a Preset Position to your Remote Control or Keyless Entry Key Fob

You can save preset memory positions for up to three remote controls or keyless entry key fobs.

1. With the ignition on, move the memory positions to the desired positions.
2. Press and hold the desired preset button for about five seconds. A tone sounds after about two seconds. Continue holding until a second tone sounds.
3. Within three seconds, press the lock button on the remote control you are linking.

To unlink a remote control, follow the same procedure – except in step 3, press the unlock button on the remote control.

**Note:** If more than one linked remote control or keyless entry key fob is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key to initiate a memory recall.

## Easy Entry and Exit Feature

If you enable the easy entry and exit feature, it automatically moves the driver seat position rearward up to two inches (five centimeters) when you switch the ignition off.

The driver seat returns to the previous position when you switch the ignition on.



# Seats

You can enable or disable this feature in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 106).

## REAR SEATS

### Second Row Seats

#### Moving the Seats Backward and Forward



**WARNING:** Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch.



E188912

# Seats

## Adjusting the Seatback



E188913

To recline the seatback, pull the lever on the outboard seats or the strap on the center seat and lean back against the seatback until it reaches the desired position.

To raise the seatback, pull the lever up and push the seat cushion forward using your weight.

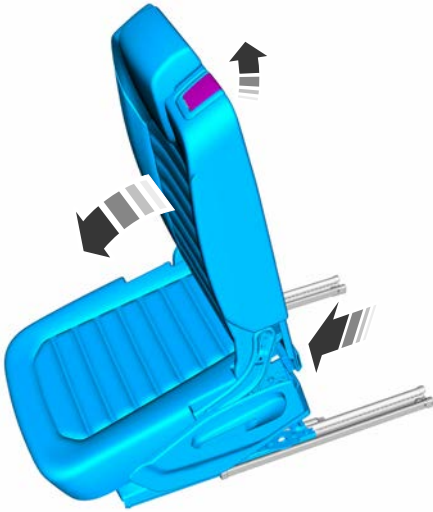
### **Easy Entry Position (Vehicles with Third Row Seats Only)**

**Note:** You can move the outboard seats forward to allow access to the third row seats.

# Seats

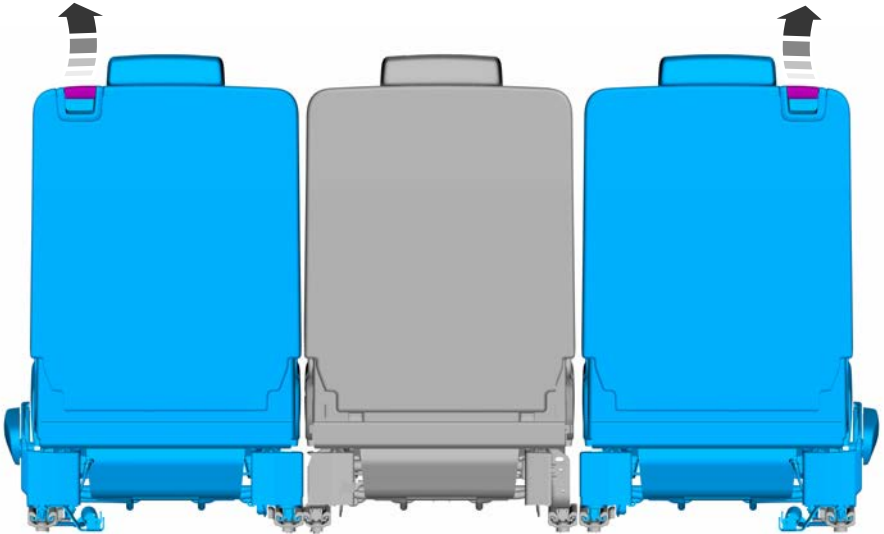
---

1. Pull the lever once. Move the seat into the position shown and slide the complete seat forward.



E188914

# Seats



E188915

2. When exiting your vehicle from the third row seats, push the lever up on the upper corner of the outboard seats.
3. To return the seat to the seating position, slide the seat backward and down until the seat latches to the floor. The seat will stop automatically at a midway position.
4. To move the seat further back, pull the lever under the front of the seat and slide it backward.

## Folding the Seatbacks Down



**WARNING:** When folding the seatbacks down, hold the seatback to avoid getting your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.

1. Lower the head restraints. See **Head Restraints** (page 141).
2. Slide the seats backward as far as they will go.
3. Insert the center seat belt into the retainer in the roof.

# Seats



E188916

4. On the outboard seats, pull the lever and fold the seatback flat.
5. On the center seat, pull the strap between the seat cushion and the seatback and fold down the seatback.

To return the seat to the seating position, pull the seatback until it engages.

The controls are located on the left-hand rear quarter trim panel (accessible from the liftgate area).

## EasyFold™ Folding Seat



**WARNING:** Make sure that the seat is unoccupied when folding it down. Folding the seat while occupied could result in damage to the seat or injury.

**Note:** The power feature is operational when the vehicle is in park (P) and the liftgate has been open for less than 10 minutes.

# Seats

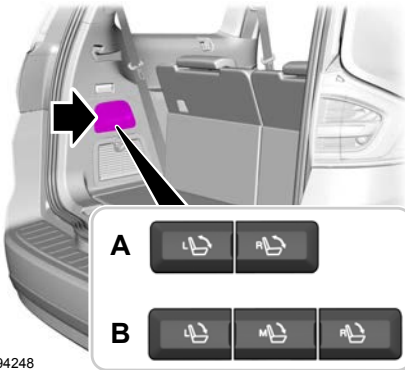
## Moving the Seats Backward and Forward (Galaxy)



**WARNING:** Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch.



E188918



E194248

- A Third row seat (optional) - For Galaxy vehicles, press the left or right control to lower or raise your desired seatback. For S-Max vehicles, press the left or right control to lower your desired seatback. Lift the seatback until it latches in the upright position.
- B Second row seats - Press the left, center or right control to lower your desired seatback. To return the seatback to the upright position, lift the seatback until it latches in the upright position.

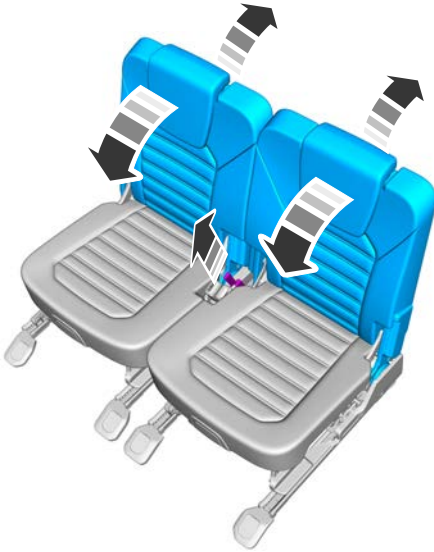
## Third Row Seats



**WARNING:** Do not sit in a third row seat when the second row seat in front of it is folded flat.

# Seats

## Adjusting the Seatback (Galaxy)



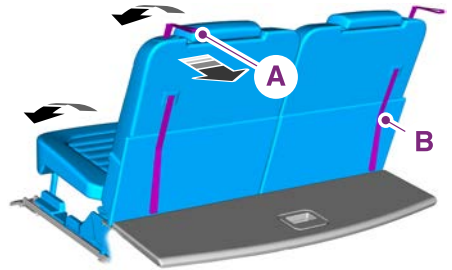
E188919

To recline the seatback, pull the strap and lean back against the seatback until it reaches the desired position.

To raise the seatback, pull the strap and let the seatback return to the upright position.

## Folding the Seats Flat

**WARNING:** When folding the seatbacks down, hold the seatback to avoid getting your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.

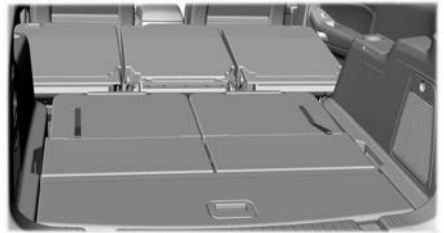


E188920

1. Pull loop A at the top of the seat. The seatback will automatically fold down.
2. To return the seat to the seating position, pull loop B.

## Creating a Level Load Floor

**WARNING:** When transporting a load with the seats folded flat, always fold the relevant carpeted cover forward to cover the folded seats.



E188923

# Seats

## HEATED SEATS



**WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



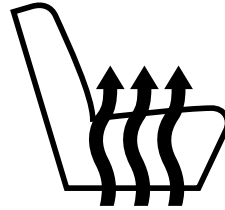
**WARNING:** Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E146941

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

## CLIMATE CONTROLLED SEATS

### Heated Seats



**WARNING:** Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.



# Seats

---

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

## Cooled Seats

The cooled seats will only function when the engine is running.



To operate the cooled seats:

Press the cooled seat symbol to cycle through the various cooling settings and off. More indicator lights indicate cooler settings.

If the engine falls below 350 RPM while the cooled seats are on, the feature will turn itself off. You will need to reactivate it.

## Climate controlled seat air filter replacement

Your vehicle is equipped with lifetime air filters that are integrated with the seats. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

# Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off.

## HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors when rear doors have been opened and closed to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the information and entertainment display screen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

**Note:** *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

**Note:** *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

**Note:** *The audible warning does not sound when the front door is opened before you switch the ignition off.*

## SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Rear Occupant Alert** on or off.

**Note:** *The default setting is on.*

**Note:** *Performing a master reset causes the system to switch on again.*

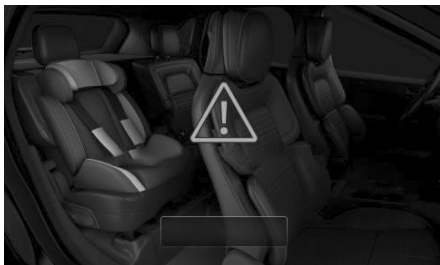
## Semiannual Reminder (If Equipped)

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

## Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

---

### REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

### REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The warning sounds for a short period of time.

# Auxiliary Power Points

## 12 Volt DC Power Point



**WARNING:** Do not plug electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps. After you switch the ignition off, the power supply works only for a maximum of 75 minutes.

**Note:** Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the outlet and blows the fuse.

**Note:** Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.

**Note:** Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watt or a fuse may blow.

**Note:** Do not use the power point for operating a cigar lighter element.

**Note:** Incorrect use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

**Note:** Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Run the engine for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent your vehicle battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when your engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when your vehicle is in park (P) for extended periods.

## Location

Power points may be found:

- On the center console.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the console.
- In the cargo area.

## 230 Volt Power Point (if Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 230 volt power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload. Powering multiple devices can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** Keep the vehicle running to use the power point.

You can use the power point for powering electrical devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.

The power point indicator light, located on the power point, shows when the power point is ready for use.

When the power point indicator light is:

- On — the power point is ready to supply power.
- Off — the power point power supply is off and so is the ignition.
- Flashing — the power point is in fault mode.

The power point temporarily turns off its power if the electrical load exceeds the 150 watt limit. The power point can also switch to a fault mode if it detects overloading, overheating or shorting conditions.

# Auxiliary Power Points

---

For overloading and shorting conditions, unplug your device and switch the ignition off and then on.

For an overheating condition, let the system cool first. Then, switch the ignition off and on again.

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

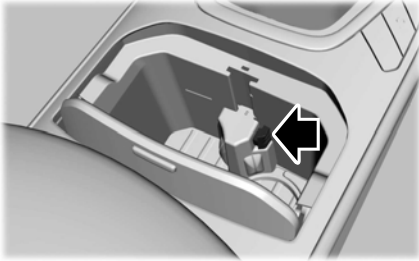
- Cathode ray tube type televisions.
- Motor loads, for example vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices which process precise data, for example medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, for example microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps.

# Storage Compartments

## CUP HOLDERS

**Note:** Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that cups placed in the holders do not obstruct your vision while driving.

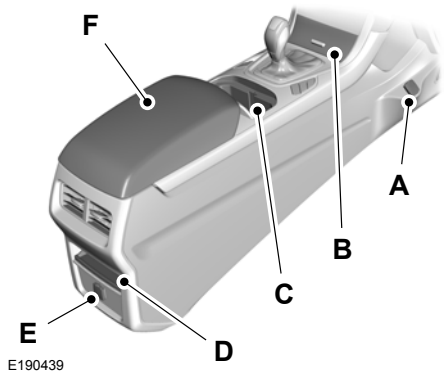


E251313

## CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

Available console features may include:



E190439

- A Auxiliary power point.
- B Storage compartment with media hub and optional USB port.
- C Cup holder.
- D Storage tray.
- E Auxiliary power point with power inverter or cigar lighter.
- F Storage compartment with auxiliary power point.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle, auxiliary power point locations could be in locations A or B.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with the smoker's package, auxiliary power points in locations B and E could be replaced with a cigar lighter.

# Storage Compartments

---

## OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E266392

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

## ASHTRAY

You can place the removable ashtray in any of the cup holders.

## REAR SEAT ARMREST





E144635


Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cup holder.


# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## GENERAL INFORMATION

 **WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

 **WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

 **WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.


 **WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

## PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH

 **WARNING:** Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.

### Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode



E144447

Press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal. It is on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Press the push button ignition switch again without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal to switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

**Note:** *The ignition turns off if you leave your vehicle unattended. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.*



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

**Note:** A valid passive key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

## Starting The Engine

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** If you release the clutch pedal during engine starting, the engine stops cranking.

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** If you release the brake pedal during engine starting, the engine stops cranking.

### Vehicles with a Diesel Engine

**Note:** The engine does not crank until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

## Failure to Start

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:

1. Insert the passive key into the backup position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page 50).
2. With the passive key in this position, you can use the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank after you fully press the clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch, do the following:

1. Fully press the clutch pedal and the brake pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

1. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators turn off.

2. Apply the parking brake.

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators turn off.

4. Apply the parking brake.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Vehicles with Manual Transmission

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

## Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

## Fast Restart

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

## Key Outside Vehicle Audible Warning

Sounds when you remove the passive key from your vehicle and the engine is running.

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock that automatically operates.

The steering wheel will lock shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it or when you lock your vehicle.

**Note:** *The steering wheel will not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.*

## Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

**Note:** *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

## Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Turn the key to position **II**.
  2. Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.
  3. Fully press the brake pedal.
- Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*
4. Turn the key to position **III**.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

**Note:** Releasing the brake pedal when the engine is starting stops the engine cranking and the ignition returns to on.

**Note:** When the temperature is below  $-15^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $5^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.

**Note:** You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

## Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 164).

## Failure to Start

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

If the engine does not start, do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine starts.

## Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 164).

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Turn the key to position **O**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

## Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 164).

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

## Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Turn the key to position **O**.
4. Apply the parking brake.

## Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 164).

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

## Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp  
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the diesel particulate filter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle inspected immediately.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in neutral.

## Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Turn the key to position **II**.
2. Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.
3. Fully press the clutch pedal.
4. Turn the key to position **III**.

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

**Note:** *Releasing the clutch pedal when the engine is starting stops the engine cranking and the ignition returns to on.*

**Note:** *When the temperature is below  $-15^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $5^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.*

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

**Note:** You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

## Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 164).

## Failure to Start

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

If the engine does not start, do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift into neutral.
4. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine starts.

### Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 164).

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Turn the key to position **O**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

### Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 164).

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. Turn the key to position **O**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

### Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 164).

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

## Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp  
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the diesel particulate filter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## STARTING A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE SYSTEM - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** *The green ready indicator illuminates letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.*

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort, fuel economy and battery charging.

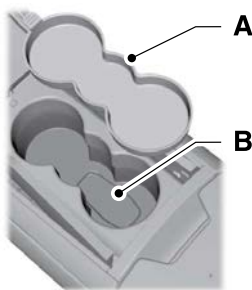
When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine.

The system does not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:

# Starting and Stopping the Engine



E155835

1. Remove the rubber covering (A) in the cupholder. With the buttons facing upward and the unlock button facing the front of your vehicle, place the passive key into the backup slot (B).
2. Press the brake pedal.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

## Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid passive key.

When your vehicle starts, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid passive key. You cannot start your vehicle if the system does not detect a valid passive key within 10 seconds.

## Automatic Shutdown

This feature automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

## Automatic Shutdown Override

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the 30-second countdown.

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

## Switching Off Your Vehicle When It Is Stationary

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Press the push button ignition switch once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

**Note:** This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.

**Note:** If your vehicle is left running for 30 minutes without any interaction, it automatically shuts down.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Switching Off Your Vehicle When It Is Moving



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods of time, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

### Vehicles With a Turbocharger



**WARNING:** Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER



**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

The heater warms the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to quickly respond. The equipment includes a heater element installed in the engine block and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 220-240 volt AC electrical source.

**Note:** *The heater is most effective when the ambient temperature is below -18°C (0°F).*



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use an extension cord suitable for outdoor use and in cold temperatures. It should be clearly marked that it is suitable for use with outdoor appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Make sure that you park your vehicle in a clean area, clear of combustible materials.
- Make sure that you firmly connect the heater, heater cord and extension cord.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup when the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure that you unplug and properly stow the system before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the terminals of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure that you check the heater system for proper operation before winter.

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry before use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It reaches maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

## Using the Engine Block Heater

The engine block heater plug may be found in one of the following locations:

- Under the hood.
- In the front fog lamp bezel.
- Front lower grille.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

---

## HYBRID VEHICLE OPERATION

This hybrid vehicle combines electric and gasoline propulsion to provide breakthrough performance and improved efficiency. Familiarizing yourself with these unique characteristics provides an optimal driving experience from your vehicle.

### Starting

**READY** When you start your vehicle, a green READY indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.

The engine may not start because your vehicle has a silent key start feature. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready to drive without requiring the gas engine to be running. The indicator remains on when your vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not, to indicate your vehicle is capable of movement using the electric motor, gas engine or both. Typically, the engine does not start unless the vehicle is cold, a climate control change is requested or you press the accelerator pedal.

### Driving

The gas engine automatically starts and stops to provide power when needed and to save fuel when not needed. When coasting at low speeds, coming to a stop, or standing, the gas engine normally shuts down and your vehicle operates in electric-only mode.

Conditions that may cause the engine to start up or remain running include:

- Considerable vehicle acceleration.
- Climbing a hill.
- Charge level of high voltage battery is low.

- High or low outside temperatures in order to provide system heating or cooling.
- Engine not warm enough to provide passenger requested cabin temperature.
- Towing a trailer.
- Selectable drive modes: Certain selectable drive modes may cause the engine to run. See **Drive Control** (page 274).

### Stopping

The gas engine may shut off to conserve fuel as you come to a stop. Restarting your vehicle is not required. Simply step on the accelerator when you are ready to drive.

### Transmission Operation

The engine and electric motor together propel the vehicle through the automatic transmission. This is normal hybrid operating and helps deliver fuel efficiency and performance.

### Battery

Your hybrid vehicle is equipped with a liquid cooled high voltage battery. A cool battery maintains battery life and provides the best possible performance.

### Braking

Your hybrid is equipped with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Regenerative braking is performed by your transmission and it captures brake energy and stores it in the high voltage battery.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

---

You may also notice during extending downhill driving that your engine continues to run instead of shutting off. During this engine braking, the engine stays on, but it is not using any fuel. You may also hear a slight whine or whistle when operating your vehicle. This is the normal operation of the electric motor in the hybrid system.

## Driving to Optimize Fuel Economy

**Note:** *Having your engine running is not always an indication of inefficiency. In some cases, it is actually more efficient than driving in electric mode.*

Your fuel economy should improve throughout your hybrid's break-in period. As with any vehicle, your driving habits and accessory usage can significantly impact your fuel economy. For best results, keep these tips in mind:

- Keep the tires properly inflated and only use the recommended size.
- Aggressive driving increases the amount of energy required to move your vehicle. In general, you can achieve better fuel economy with mild to moderate acceleration and deceleration. Moderate braking is particularly important since it allows you to maximize the energy captured by the regenerative braking system.

### Additional Tips:

- Do not carry extra loads.
- Be mindful of adding external accessories that may increase aerodynamic drag.
- Observe posted speed limits.
- Perform all scheduled maintenance.
- There is no need to wait for your engine to warm up. The vehicle is ready to drive immediately after starting.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

## HYBRID VEHICLE FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Question	Answer
What are the series of clicks I hear when I first turn the key in the ignition?	The high voltage battery is electrically isolated from the rest of the vehicle when the key is off. When you switch the key on, high voltage contactors inside the battery are closed to make the electricity available to the motor and generator and enable the vehicle to drive. The clicks are the sound of these contactors as they close and open during start up and shut down.
Why does the engine sometimes start at key-on?	The vehicle's computer determines if an engine start is required at key-on. The engine starts if it is necessary for cabin heating, windshield defrost, or if the outside temperature is low.
Why does it take a long time before the engine shuts down?	There are several reasons the engine stays on for an extended amount of time when you first start it. One common reason is to make sure that the emissions components are warm enough to minimize tailpipe emissions. As the climate gets cooler, this engine-on time is extended.
Why does my engine stay on when it is extremely cold outside?	In order to make sure that the climate control system can begin heating the cabin or defrosting the windshield as soon as a driver requests it, the engine coolant temperature has to be kept sufficiently hot. Keeping the engine on is required to maintain the correct coolant temperature.

## Unique Driving Characteristics

---

<b>Question</b>	<b>Answer</b>
What is the engine oil change service interval?	Change the engine oil according to your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor recommendation which under normal driving conditions should be 20,000 km (12,500 mi) or 2 years. Comply with the regular maintenance intervals.
Can I put E15 or E85 in my vehicle, and how will it affect my fuel economy?	Your hybrid vehicle can use E15 fuel (15% ethanol, 85% gasoline), but you may notice slightly reduced fuel economy because ethanol contains less energy per gallon than gasoline. Your hybrid vehicle is not designed to use E85 (85% ethanol).
How long will my high voltage battery last? Does it need maintenance?	The high voltage battery system is designed to last the life of the vehicle and requires no maintenance.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

## WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

## AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal and the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

**Note:** *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Press the clutch pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear.	Shift into neutral to restart the engine.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

## AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

---

## Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions

### Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.



# Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

## WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

## AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

**Note:** *The engine stops when you shift into park (P) or neutral (N) whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

**Note:** *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

---

## Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions

### Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The transmission is in manual (M).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.

- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Can I permanently switch the system off?


No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.


### Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?


Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.


# Fuel and Refueling


## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

 **WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

 **WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.


 **WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.


Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.

- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

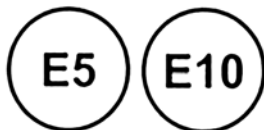
## FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

 **WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

 **WARNING:** Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

# Fuel and Refueling



E268502

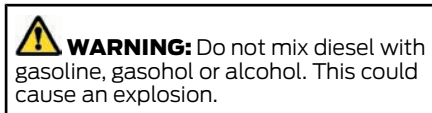
Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

**Note:** We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

## Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

## FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL



Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.



E268503

Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

**Note:** We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

**Note:** We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.

## Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain biodiesel. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain biodiesel if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

## FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is in the passenger compartment floor, behind the front right-hand seat.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

**Note:** If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.

# Fuel and Refueling

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container

**WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

## Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

**WARNING:** Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

**WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 185).

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.



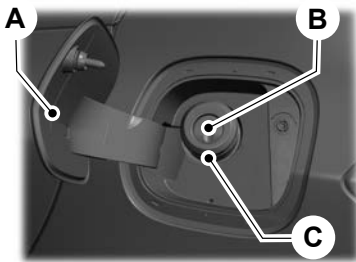
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

**Note:** Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

# Fuel and Refueling

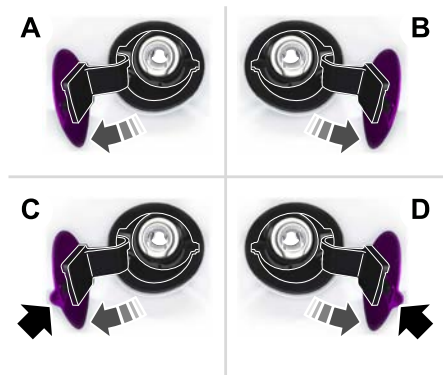
## REFUELING - EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

### Refueling System Overview



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel tank filler valve.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.



- A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.
- D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

### Refueling Your Vehicle

**⚠ WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

# Fuel and Refueling

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

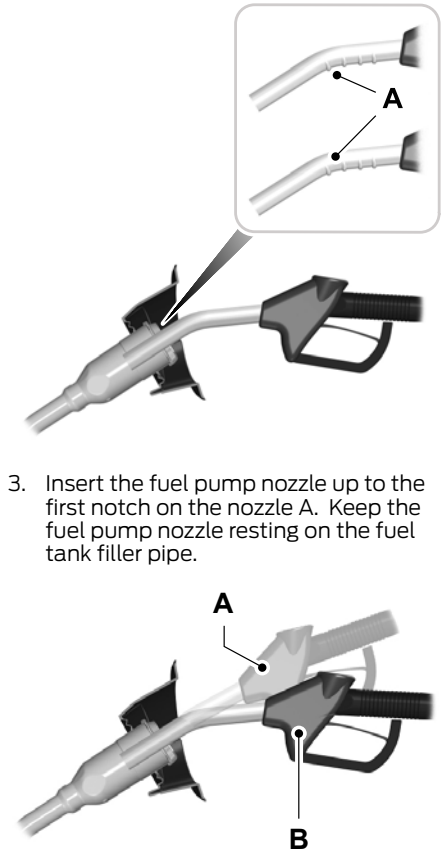
**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



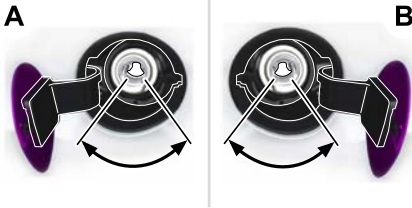
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

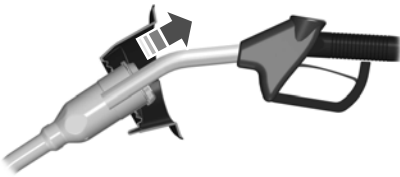
E139203



# Fuel and Refueling



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When you finish refueling slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## Refueling System Warning (If Equipped)

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message could appear in the information display.

Message
Check fuel fill inlet


If the message appears, do the following:


1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).


3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.
6. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 185). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.
9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

**Note:** The message may not immediately reset. If the message continues to appear and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## REFUELING-PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

 **WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

 **WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

# Fuel and Refueling

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

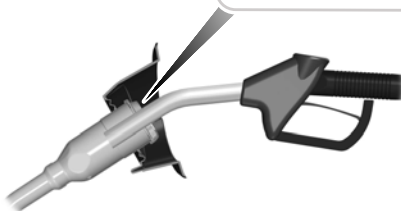
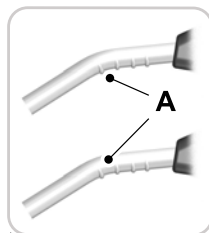
**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. When you stop your vehicle, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.

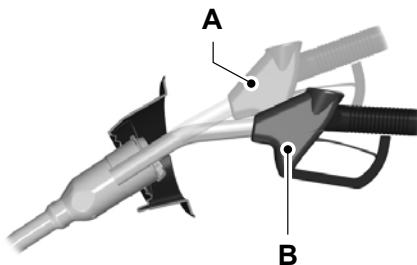


E146221

2. Press the button next to the lighting control to open the fuel filler door. The fuel filler door can take up to 15 seconds to open before you can insert a fuel filler nozzle.



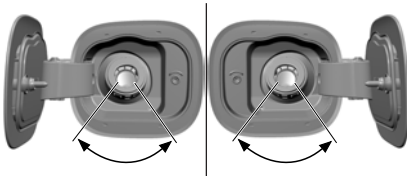
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



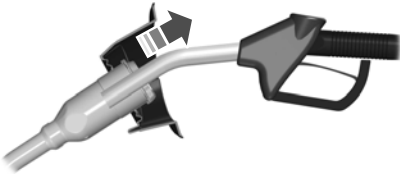
E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

# Fuel and Refueling



- Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



- When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
- Fully close the fuel filler door.

**Note:** To close the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes. If 20 minutes elapses, press the button on the dashboard again. Fuel pump nozzle automatic shut off could occur if you do not press the button on the dashboard.

## System Warnings

If the fuel filler door fails to open, an information message appears in the information display.

Message	Description and Action
Refuel error See manual	A warning message appears in the information display when the fuel system fails to depressurize or the fuel filler door fails to open. You may have to use the fuel filler door manual override lever.

If the information message appears, do the following:

- Check the fuel filler door for anything that may be obstructing its movement, for example ice or snow.
- Remove any obstruction from the fuel filler door.
- Press the button on the dashboard to open the fuel filler door.
- If the fuel filler door fails to open and the information message remains in the information display, use the fuel filler door manual override lever.

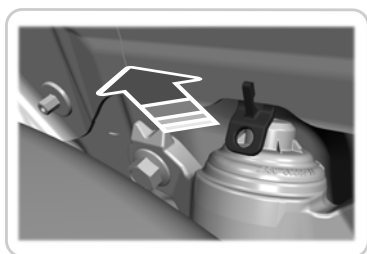
## Fuel Filler Door Manual Override Lever

When using the manual override lever do the following:

**Note:** The transmission must be in park (P) or neutral (N).

- Switch the ignition on.

# Fuel and Refueling



**Note:** The manual override lever is in the driver side rear wheel well area.

2. Pull the manual override lever.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

We derive CO<sub>2</sub> and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle.

Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing.

## Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 369).

In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**Note:** The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.

## Fuel Economy

Your vehicle calculates fuel economy figures through the trip computer average fuel function.

The first 1,500 km (1,000 mi) of driving is the break-in period of the engine. A more accurate measurement is obtained after 3,000 km (2,000 mi).

## Impacting Fuel Economy

- Incorrect tire inflation pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 357).
- Fully loading your vehicle.
- Carrying unnecessary weight.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards and ski racks.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol. See **Fuel Quality** (page 185).
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.

# Fuel and Refueling

---

- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You may get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

# Engine Emission Control

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.

- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

**Note:** *Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If you use anything other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

# Engine Emission Control

## On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle has a computer known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. The system protects the environment by making sure that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists a service technician in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. Your vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel fill inlet may not have closed properly. See **Refueling** (page 187).
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time you start the engine. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city and highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness and lead to more costly repairs.

## Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state and provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, your vehicle may need service. See On-Board Diagnostics.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that your vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

# Engine Emission Control

---

The OBD-II system checks the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days.

If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you can perform the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving:

1. 15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway or highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.
2. Allow your vehicle to sit for at least eight hours with the ignition off. Then, start the vehicle and complete the above driving cycle. The vehicle must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the vehicle until the above driving cycle is complete.

If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you need to repeat the above driving cycle.

## SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTANT SYSTEM - 2.0L ECOBLUE

Your vehicle has a selective catalytic reductant system. This reduces exhaust emission levels by injecting AdBlue® into the exhaust system. The engine does not start if you tamper with or disable the selective catalytic reductant system.

For the system to correctly operate, you must maintain the fluid level.

**Note:** *When you switch the engine off the selective catalytic reductant system pump runs for a short period of time. This is normal.*

## AdBlue® Guidelines

- Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.
- Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Do not put fuel or any additives in the AdBlue® tank. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.
- Do not dilute with water or any other liquid.
- Do not re-use an empty fluid container.
- Do not store in direct sunlight.
- Store at temperatures between -5°C (23°F) and 20°C (68°F).
- Do not store fluid containers in your vehicle.
- The fluid is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.
- Immediately remove any residue on painted surfaces when filling with AdBlue®.



# Engine Emission Control

## Filling the AdBlue® Tank



E204215

The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

### Filling in Cold Climates

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below  $-11^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $12^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below  $-11^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $12^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below  $-11^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $12^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).

**Note:** If the AdBlue® tank is frozen, it could not correctly display the fluid level or recognize when you fill the tank. The AdBlue® level updates when the tank completely thaws out.

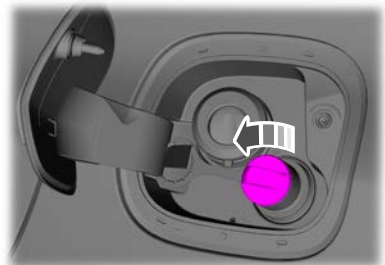
## Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.

**⚠ WARNING:** Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

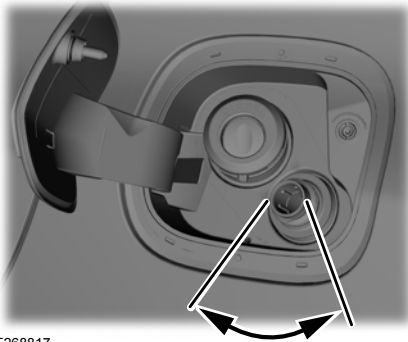
1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



E268809

2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
3. Fully insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.

# Engine Emission Control



E268817

4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.

**Note:** The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.

5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Container



**WARNING:** Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.

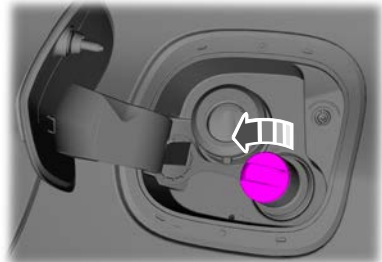


**WARNING:** Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.
2. Place the spout on to the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.



E268809

3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.
5. Pour the fluid into the tank.

**Note:** The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.

6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.

# Engine Emission Control

7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
9. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
10. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## AdBlue® Consumption

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 6% of the fuel consumption.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.

You can find information about the selective catalytic reductant system in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 106).

## Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Selective Catalytic Reductant System Information Messages

### AdBlue® Level

Message	Action
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon  AdBlue® low Range : XXXX mls Refill soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.

# Engine Emission Control

Message	Action
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls	
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display. See <b>Information Displays</b> (page 106).

**Note:** When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased AdBlue® level is registered.

**Note:** If the AdBlue® tank freezes at low level, the displayed remaining distance could be reduced.

## AdBlue® Malfunction

Message	Action
AdBlue® system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system Service required to start engine	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER



**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

To reduce the risk of causing damage to the gasoline particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

# Engine Emission Control

## Gasoline Particulate Filter Regeneration

Particles in the exhaust gas collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles in the exhaust gas into harmless gases.

Regeneration occurs during normal driving, to varying degrees depending on how you drive. Passive regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed but if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust gas temperature to remove the particles that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

To assist passive regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional journeys that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

If the filter is saturated or is approaching saturation, a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

**Note:** *A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display on some vehicles.*

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## Gasoline Particulate Filter Warning Lamps and Indicators



Malfunction indicator lamp.

## Gasoline Particulate Filter Information Messages

Message	Action
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears.</li><li>• Avoid prolonged engine idling.</li><li>• Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.</li></ul>
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Drive at a moderate speed.</li><li>• Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration.</li><li>• Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.</li></ul>

# Engine Emission Control

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER



**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a diesel particulate filter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. It filters harmful diesel particulates, for example soot from the exhaust gas.

To avoid damaging the diesel particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 294).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps or information messages regarding exhaust system cleaning and regeneration.

**Note:** *This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

## On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this indicates that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Engine coolant temperature warning lamp.



Ignition warning lamp.



Malfunction indicator lamp.



Powertrain warning Lamp.



Water in fuel warning lamp.

If you continue to drive your vehicle with a warning lamp illuminated, the engine could stop without warning. This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Engine Emission Control

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 101).

## Diesel Particulate Filter Automatic Regeneration



**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain correct operation. The emission control system automatically carries out this process. As soot gathers in the system it begins to restrict the filter. The soot that gathers inside the filter is cleaned in two different ways, passive regeneration and active regeneration. Both methods occur automatically and require no actions from the driver. During automatic regeneration, the system cleans the diesel particulate filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning happens during normal engine operating conditions at varying levels depending on driving conditions.



Diesel particulate filter warning lamp.

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, a warning lamp or information message appears in the information display. Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning.

The warning lamp continues to illuminate until the automatic regeneration process completes. Continue to drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning until the warning lamp turns off.

Failure to carry out regeneration when required could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, the system disables the ability to carry out regeneration. This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Where vehicle use meets any of the following conditions:

- Driving short distances.
- Prolonged engine idling.
- Frequently switching the engine on and off.
- High levels of acceleration and deceleration.

We recommend you assist the regeneration process by:

- Avoiding prolonged engine idling.
- Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective cleaning. Drive at a steady vehicle speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) or above for approximately 20 minutes.

# Engine Emission Control

---



If the soot load in the diesel particulate filter reaches a critical level, the malfunction indicator lamp illuminates with the diesel particulate filter warning message. A service regeneration must be performed to recover the particulate filter. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to prevent further damage.

Automatic regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the soot particles. During cleaning, soot particles are converted to harmless gasses. Once cleaned, the diesel particulate filter continues to trap harmful diesel particles.

If you are driving your vehicle in a manner that allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to indicate automatic regeneration is in progress.

If you are not driving your vehicle in a manner that allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to instruct you to drive in a manner that allows automatic regeneration.

The automatic regeneration process is most effective when you drive at a steady vehicle speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) or above for approximately 20 minutes. The frequency and duration of the regeneration process varies by how you drive your vehicle, the outside air temperature and altitude. Frequency varies between 160 km (100 mi) and 500 km (310 mi) and each regeneration process lasts between 10 and 20 minutes.

**Note:** *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

**Note:** *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you could smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during the regeneration process. This is normal.*



# High Voltage Battery - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

---

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

**Note:** *The high-voltage battery does not require regular service maintenance.*

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

The high-voltage battery pack contains a lithium-ion battery. The pack is underneath the vehicle. The high-voltage battery system uses an advanced liquid heating and cooling system to regulate the high-voltage battery temperature and help maximize high-voltage battery life.

# Transmission

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### General Information

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

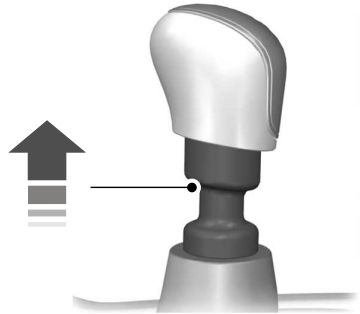
Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

If any gear is not fully engaged, fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

### Shifting Into Reverse Gear


Do not shift into reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.


1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.




3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse gear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

 **WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

 **WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

 **WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Transmission

**Note:** The ready to drive indicator may be off and you may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the remote control is inside your vehicle.

## Understanding the Shift Positions of Your Automatic Transmission



E224178

### Putting your vehicle in or out of gear:

Your vehicle has an electronic transmission shifter. The transmission selector is on the center console, below the climate control system.

To place your vehicle in gear from park (P):


1. Fully press and hold the brake pedal when shifting out of park (P).
2. Rotate the outer ring of the transmission selector clockwise from park (P), until the desired gear illuminates on the transmission selector.
3. Release the brake pedal and the transmission remains in the selected gear.

The instrument cluster also displays the current gear.

### Park (P)


With the transmission selector in park (P), your vehicle locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning. Always come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of park (P).

### Reverse (R)

 **WARNING:** Move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

With the transmission selector in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

### Neutral (N)

 **WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle has the ability to roll freely. If you intend to leave your vehicle, make sure you apply the parking brake.

With the transmission selector in neutral (N), your vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down when in this position.

### Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy.

### Low (L)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- The transmission may be shifted into low (L) at any vehicle speed.
- Is not intended for use under extended or normal driving conditions and results in lower fuel economy.

# Transmission

## Automatic Return to Park

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with your seatbelt unlatched.
- You unlatch the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

**Note:** *This feature does not operate when your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.*

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if the door ajar switch is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

**Note:** *Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. See **Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System** (page 170).*

## Stay in Neutral Mode

This mode keeps your vehicle in neutral (N) when you switch your vehicle off. Use this mode if you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off at an automatic car wash.

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Note:** *Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode.*

## To enter Stay in Neutral Mode

1. Power your vehicle on. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 164).
2. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

**Note:** *An instructional message appears.*

5. Press the low (L) button in the middle of the transmission selector.

**Note:** *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode and the neutral (N) button on the transmission selector flashes.*

6. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

7. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

## To exit Stay in Neutral Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

## Grade Assist



Press the grade assist button to activate grade assist. The grade assist lamp appears in the instrument cluster. Press the button again to switch it off.

- Provides additional grade braking with a combination of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging to help maintain vehicle speed when descending a slope.

# Transmission

- As your vehicle determines the amount of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging, you may notice the engine speed increasing and decreasing to help maintain your vehicle speed when descending a slope.

## If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck in Mud or Snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission could occur.

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires could occur, or the engine could overheat.

## Automatic Transmission Information Messages

Message	Description
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Transmission not in Park	A reminder to shift into park. In addition, this message typically appears after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode.
Shift malfunction Confirm park brake Apply before exiting the vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be depressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.
Transmission malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Select L to confirm Stay in neutral mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Stay in neutral mode engaged	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered stay in neutral mode.

# Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



**WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

### Transmission Selector Positions

**P R N D S**

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

#### Park (P)

In park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the transmission in this position.

Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

**Note:** The electric parking brake could automatically apply when you shift into park (P). See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 216).

#### Reverse (R)



**WARNING:** Move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

#### Neutral (N)



**WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle has the ability to roll freely. If you intend to leave your vehicle, make sure you apply the parking brake.

In neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the transmission in this position.

#### Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal position for driving.

#### Sport (S)

In sport (S), the transmission selects the optimum gear for best performance.

#### SelectShift™ (if Equipped)

##### About SelectShift™

Use this feature to upshift or downshift using the paddle shifters.

##### Using SelectShift™

You can only use this feature in drive (D) or sport (S).

# Transmission



Pull the right paddle (+) to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

In sport (S), shift into drive (D) to switch the feature off.

**Note:** *SelectShift in drive (D) provides temporary manual control of the gear selection.*

## Automatic Return to Park

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with your seatbelt unlatched.
- You unlatch the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

**Note:** *This feature does not operate when your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.*

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if the door ajar switch is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

**Note:** *Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency.*

## Stay in Neutral Mode

This mode keeps your vehicle in neutral (N) when you switch your vehicle off. Use this mode if you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off at an automatic car wash.

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Note:** *Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode.*

## Entering Stay in Neutral Mode

1. Power your vehicle on. See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 166).
2. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

**Note:** *An instructional message appears.*

5. Press the sport (S) button.

**Note:** *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode and the neutral (N) button on the transmission selector flashes.*

6. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

7. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

## Exiting Stay in Neutral Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.

# Transmission

---

2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

## Entering Stay in Neutral Mode - Failure to Start

Use this feature to move the transmission selector out of park (P) if you cannot start the vehicle.

**Note:** *This feature does not function if the vehicle battery charge is low.*

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

1. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the brake pedal. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Fully press the accelerator pedal. Keep the accelerator pedal fully pressed.
4. Shift from park (P) to neutral (N).
5. Press the sport (S) button.
6. Attempt to start your vehicle.

**Note:** *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode and the neutral (N) button on the transmission selector flashes.*

7. Release the accelerator and brake pedals.

**Note:** *Now your vehicle can freely roll.*

8. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** *The transmission returns to park (P) if the vehicle battery charge is low.*

To return to park (P), press the brake pedal and shift into park (P).



# All-Wheel Drive

## USING ALL-WHEEL DRIVE

All-wheel drive uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot. The AWD system turns on when needed and does not require input from you.

**Note:** A warning message appears in the information display when an AWD system fault is present. See **Information Messages** (page 111).

An AWD system fault will cause the AWD system to default to front-wheel drive only mode. When this warning message is displayed, have your vehicle serviced at an authorized dealer

**Note:** A warning message appears in the information display if the AWD system has overheated. See **Information Messages** (page 111). This condition may occur if the vehicle was operated in extreme conditions with excessive wheel slip, such as deep sand. To resume normal AWD function as soon as possible, stop the vehicle in a safe location and stop the engine for at least 10 minutes. As the engine restarts and the AWD system has adequately cooled, the warning message turns off and normal AWD function returns.

Do not use a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided. If the mini-spare tire is installed, the AWD system may disable automatically and enter front-wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components. This condition is indicated by a warning in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 111). If there is a warning message in the information display from using the spare tire, this indicator should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced normal road tire and cycling the ignition off and on. It is recommended to

reinstall the repaired or replaced road tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause the AWD system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive or damage the AWD system.

## Driving on Snow and Ice



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

**Note:** Excessive tire slippage can cause driveline damage.

AWD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

Should you start to slide when driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although an AWD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won't stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

## All-Wheel Drive

---

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. Since your vehicle is equipped with a four wheel (ABS), do not pump the brakes. See **Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes** (page 216). for more information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system (ABS).

# Brakes

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**Note:** Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have it checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 346).

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

**BRAKE** See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 101).



Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

## Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

## Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you rapidly brake by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. It can also reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

## Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.



If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

# Brakes

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

**Note:** *If the system activates, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



**WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery is running out of charge.

Your vehicle has an electric parking brake. You operate it with a switch instead of a lever. The switch is on the center console or to the left-hand side of the steering wheel, on the lower part of the instrument panel.

**Note:** *The electric parking brake makes noises during operation. This is normal.*

## Applying the Electric Parking Brake



Pull the switch upward.



The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** *It remains illuminated for a short period of time after you switch the ignition off.*

If it continues to flash or does not illuminate, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.*

**Note:** *The electric parking brake could automatically apply when you shift into park (P). See **Automatic Transmission** (page 210).*

## Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency

**Note:** *Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.*

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.



The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

# Brakes

## Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Switch the ignition on.

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Push the switch downward.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.



Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

## Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Close the driver door.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the parking brake.

## Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery is running out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 294).


## Electric Parking Brake Information Messages


Message	Action
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.


# Brakes

Message	Action
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park brake off	The electric parking brake is released.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake on	The electric parking brake is applied.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

 **WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

 **WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery is running out of charge.

Your vehicle has an electric parking brake. You operate it with a switch instead of a lever. The switch is on the center console.

**Note:** *The electric parking brake makes noises during operation. This is normal.*

### Applying the Electric Parking Brake



Pull the switch upward.



The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** *It remains illuminated for a short period of time after you switch the ignition off.*

If it continues to flash or does not illuminate, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

### Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency

**Note:** *Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.*

# Brakes

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.



The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

## Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Switch the ignition on.

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Push the switch downward.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.



Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

## Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Close the driver door.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the parking brake.

**Note:** *The electric parking brake could release if you release the clutch pedal and press the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in neutral.*

## Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery is running out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 294).

# Brakes

## Electric Parking Brake Information Messages

Message	Action
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park brake off	The electric parking brake is released.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake on	The electric parking brake is applied.

## HILL START ASSIST



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



# Brakes



**WARNING:** The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent or if you rev the engine excessively. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle remains stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The system releases the brakes automatically once the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system activates on any slope that causes your vehicle to roll.

**Note:** *There is no warning light to indicate the system is either on or off.*

## Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and shift into first gear when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system activates automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for about two to three seconds. This hold time automatically extends if you are in the process of driving off.

4. Drive off in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes automatically.

**Note:** *When you remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the pedal again when the system is active, you will experience significantly reduced brake pedal travel. This is normal.*

## Switching the System On and Off

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

You cannot turn the system on or off. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

# Traction Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

## USING TRACTION CONTROL



**WARNING:** The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

**Note:** *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

## Switching the System Off

When you switch the system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

You can switch the system off by either using the information display controls or the switch.

## Using the Information Display Controls

You can switch this feature off or on in the information display. See **General Information** (page 106).

## Using a Switch (If Equipped)

Use the traction control switch on the instrument panel to switch the system off or on.

## System Indicator Lights and Messages



The stability and traction control light:

- Temporarily illuminates on engine start-up.
- Flashes when a driving condition activates either of the systems.
- Illuminates if a problem occurs in either of the systems.



The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you switch the traction control system off.

# Stability Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

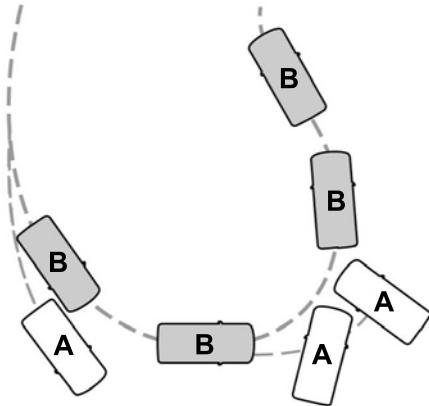
### Electronic Stability Control



**WARNING:** The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. The system does this by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This helps to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.



- A Without ESC.
- B With ESC.

### Stability Control Warning Lamp



Flashes during operation. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 101).

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

You cannot switch the stability control and roll stability control systems off, but when you shift into reverse (R), the systems deactivate.

You can switch the traction control system off or on. See **Using Traction Control** (page 222).

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

### PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**Note:** Some accessories such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

**Note:** The sensing system cannot be turned off when a MyKey is present. See **Principle of Operation** (page 51).

We recommend that you take some time to get to know the system and its limitations by reading this section.

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.



You can turn the system on or off by pressing the parking aid button. If your vehicle does not have a parking aid button, the system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 106).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on.

See **Information Messages** (page 111).

### REAR PARKING AID



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover up the sensors.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

**Note:** Some accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

The sensors are on the rear bumper.

The sensors are active when the transmission is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph). When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the center of the rear bumper.

**Note:** There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (70 in) from the rear bumper.

If the system detects a fault, a warning message appears in the information display.

The system detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed and an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed.

If your vehicle remains stationary for two seconds the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

**Note:** If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper, the audible warning does not turn off.



# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

## Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If the system does not detect an object, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving and the detected object is moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings stop after two seconds. Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).

## FRONT PARKING AID

**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover up the sensors.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

**Note:** Some accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

The sensors are on the front bumper.

The sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P). When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

**Note:** *There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.*

The system turns off when the vehicle speed reaches 8 km/h (5 mph).



The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the center of the bumper.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the system detects objects when your vehicle is moving at low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds.

If the transmission is in any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings when your vehicle is moving and an object is within the detection area. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds and the visual warning turns off after four seconds.

If the system detects a fault, a warning message appears in the information display.

## Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings stop after two seconds and visual indication stops after four seconds.

**Note:** *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below, for example, your vehicle is moving on a slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, visual indication stops after four seconds.

## SIDE SENSING SYSTEM

**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

The system uses the front and rear outermost parking aid sensors to detect objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle. The system displays them on a virtual map in the information display as your vehicle moves past them.

The sensors are on the front and rear bumpers.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover up the sensors.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

The system may not function if:

- You switch the ignition on, off and back on within a few seconds.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.

**Note:** If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.

**Note:** Some accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

To reinitialize the system, you may have to drive your vehicle approximately 3 m (10 ft).



The sensor coverage area is up to 60 cm (24 in) from the side of your vehicle.



## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

When the system detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

**Note:** *The system does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear sensor.*

### Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audible warnings and a visual indication when detected objects are within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds.

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds and the visual indication turns off after four seconds.

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides a visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below. For example, your vehicle is moving on a slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the system is not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Active park assist does not apply the brakes under any circumstances.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Active park assist is a multi-step process and may require you to shift the transmission multiple times. Follow the onscreen instructions until the parking maneuver is complete.

If you are uncomfortable with the proximity to any vehicle or object, you may choose to override the system by grabbing the steering wheel, or by taking full control of your vehicle after pressing the active park assist button.

Keep your hands, hair, clothing and any loose items clear of the steering wheel when using active park assist.

The sensors are on the front and rear bumpers.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not cover up the sensors.*

**Note:** *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

**Note:** *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves. The sensors may falsely detect objects due to ultrasonic interference caused by motorcycle exhausts, truck air brakes or horns, for example.*

**Note:** *If you change any tires, the system must recalibrate and may not correctly operate for a short time.*

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- You use a spare tire or a tire that is significantly worn more than the other tires.
- One or more tires are incorrectly inflated.
- You try to park on a tight curve.
- Something passes between the front bumper and the parking space. For example, a pedestrian or cyclist.
- The edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground. For example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck.
- The weather conditions are poor. For example, during heavy rain, snow, fog, high humidity and high temperatures.

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached an add-on accessory close to the sensors on the front or rear of your vehicle. For example, a bike rack or trailer.
- You have attached an overhanging object to the roof. For example, a surfboard.
- The front bumper, rear bumper or the side sensors are damaged.
- The correct tire size is not in use on your vehicle. For example, a mini-spare tire.

## Using Active Park Assist

### Selecting an Active Park Assist Mode



Press the button once to activate parallel parking. Press the button a second time to activate perpendicular parking. If you press the button again the system switches off.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

If your vehicle is parked and after you switch the ignition on, you can use the information display to toggle through the modes. Press the button to switch the system on and open the system menu in the information display.

**Note:** If your vehicle is parked, the default mode is parallel park out assist. However, if you did not use active park assist to parallel park your vehicle, use the information display to select park out assist.

**Note:** You can repeatedly press the active park assist button to toggle through the modes only after moving your vehicle approximately 10 m (33 ft).

To toggle through the modes, use the buttons on the information display to select the following:

- Parallel parking.
- Perpendicular parking.
- Parallel park out assist.
- Switch the system off.

**Note:** There is no time limit for toggling through the modes.

### Parallel Parking

The system detects available parallel parking spaces and steers your vehicle into the space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you into a parallel parking space.



Press the button once to search for a parking space.

**Note:** You can also switch the system on after you have already driven partially or completely past a parking space. Press the active park assist button and the system informs you if you have recently passed a suitable parking space.

When the vehicle speed is less than 35 km/h (22 mph), the system scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. A message and a graphic appear in the information display to indicate the system is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

**Note:** The system scans both sides of your vehicle and offers parking spaces one side at a time if you do not use the direction indicator.

**Note:** The system defaults to the passenger side if you do not use the direction indicator.



Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** If you drive your vehicle less than 0.5 m (2 ft) or greater than 1.5 m (5 ft) away from other parked vehicles, the system may not be able to detect an available parking space.

When the system detects a suitable space, a message displays and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the onscreen instructions. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may have to move forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

**Note:** You must observe that the space the system selects remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.

**Note:** The system always offers the last parking space it detects. For example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces when you are driving, it offers the last one.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

**Note:** If the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 35 km/h (22 mph), the system shows a message to instruct you to reduce the vehicle speed.

## Automatically Steering into a Parallel Parking Space

When you shift into reverse (R), with your hands off the steering wheel and nothing obstructing its movement, your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

**Note:** If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 9 km/h (6 mph), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.

**Note:** If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.



When you believe your vehicle is correctly parked, or a solid tone sounds and an information message appears, bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When the Active Park Assist maneuver is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.

**Note:** You are responsible for checking how your vehicle is parked and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.

## Deactivating Active Park Assist

You can manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the Active Park Assist button during an active maneuver.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above 35 km/h (22 mph) for 30 seconds when searching for a parking space.
- Driving above 50 km/h (31 mph).
- Driving above 9 km/h (6 mph) during an active maneuver.
- Switching the traction control system off.

Certain vehicle conditions may also deactivate the system, for example:

- The traction control system activates or fails.
- The anti-lock brake system activates or fails.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears and a tone sounds. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Perpendicular Parking

The system detects available perpendicular parking spaces and steers your vehicle into the space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you into a perpendicular parking space.



Press the button twice to search for a parking space.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

When the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph), the system scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. A message and a graphic appear in the information display to indicate the system is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

**Note:** The system scans both sides of your vehicle and offers parking spaces one side at a time if you do not use the direction indicator.

**Note:** The system defaults to the passenger side if you do not use the direction indicator.



Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) and perpendicular to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** If you drive your vehicle less than 0.5 m (2 ft) or greater than 1.5 m (5 ft) away from other parked vehicles, the system may not be able to detect an available parking space.

When the system detects a suitable space, a message displays and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the onscreen instructions. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may have to move forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

**Note:** You must observe that the space the system selects remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.

**Note:** The system always offers the last detected parking space. For example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces when you are driving, it offers the last one.

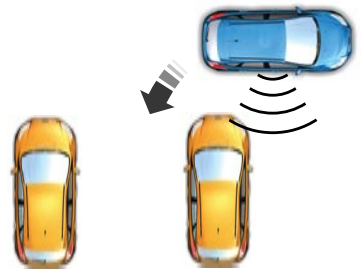
**Note:** If the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 30 km/h (19 mph), the system shows a message to instruct you to reduce the vehicle speed.

### Automatically Steering into a Perpendicular Parking Space

When you shift into reverse (R), with your hands off the steering wheel and nothing obstructing its movement, your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

**Note:** If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 9 km/h (6 mph), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.

**Note:** If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.



When you believe your vehicle is correctly parked, or a solid tone sounds and an information message appears, bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

When the active park assist maneuver is complete, a tone sounds and a message appears.

**Note:** You are responsible for checking how your vehicle is parked and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.

### Deactivating Active Park Assist

You can manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the Active Park Assist button during an active maneuver.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above 30 km/h (19 mph) for 30 seconds when searching for a parking space.
- Driving above 50 km/h (31 mph).
- Driving above 9 km/h (6 mph) during an active maneuver.
- Switching the traction control system off.

Certain vehicle conditions may also deactivate the system, for example:

- The traction control system activates or fails.
- The anti-lock brake system activates or fails.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears and a tone sounds. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Parallel Park Out Assist

The system steers your vehicle out of a parallel parking space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you out of a parallel parking space.

**Note:** This system is not intended to assist when exiting a perpendicular parking space.



Press the button once when your vehicle is stationary in a parallel parking space.

**Note:** If you did not use active park assist to parallel park your vehicle, pressing the button once selects parallel park. You must use the information display to select park out assist.

The system displays a message instructing you to switch a direction indicator on. Use the direction indicator to select which side of your vehicle you want to exit the parking space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

**Note:** If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.



After the system directs your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle. Generally, hand-over is when your vehicle is still inside the parking space.

**Note:** Parallel Park Out Assist may not be available when the clearance to the front or the rear of your vehicle is too small.

**Note:** If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 9 km/h (6 mph), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

**Note:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle and making sure the path is clear prior to pulling into traffic.

### Troubleshooting

Symptom	Possible Cause
The system does not search for a parking space.	You may have switched the traction control off.
	The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.
The system does not offer a parking space.	The sensors may be blocked. For example, snow, ice or dirt buildup. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.
	There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
	There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
	The parking space is more than 1.5 m (5 ft) or less than 0.5 m (2 ft) away.
	The vehicle speed is greater than 35 km/h (22 mph) for parallel parking or greater than 30 km/h (19 mph) for perpendicular parking.
	You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.
The system does not correctly position your vehicle in a parking space.	Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the current transmission position. For example, rolling forward when in reverse (R).
	An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.
	Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be correctly parked.
	Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.
	The tires may not be correctly installed or maintained. For example, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
	A repair or alteration changes the detection capabilities.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause
	A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.
	The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
	The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA



**WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



The camera is on the rear cargo door.

### Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).



## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

The system uses three types of guidelines to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

**Note:** If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the rear cargo door is open, no rear view camera features will display.

**Note:** When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

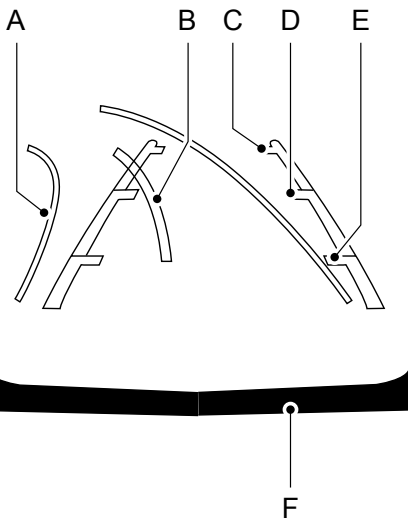
- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

### Camera System Settings

You can access the rear view camera system settings through the display screen. See **General Information** (page 106).

### Camera Guidelines

**Note:** Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



E142436

- A Active guidelines
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone
- F Rear bumper

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

## Obstacle Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



The system will provide an image of your vehicle and the sensor zones. The zones will highlight green, yellow and red when the parking aid sensors detect an object in the coverage area.

## Manual Zoom



**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

**Note:** *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

**Note:** *When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.*

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

## Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF. The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P) (automatic transmission).
- You apply the parking brake (manual transmission).

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

### 180 DEGREE CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)



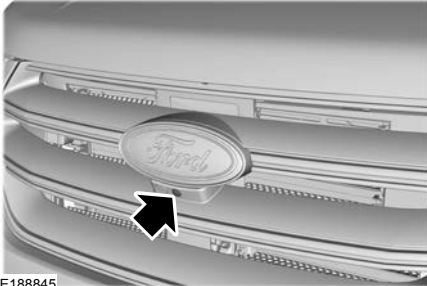
**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** The front camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.



E188845

The front view camera is located in the grille.

The front view camera provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

**Note:** The area displayed on the screen may vary according to your vehicle's orientation or road condition.

**Note:** The front view camera will switch off if your vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph). You will have to switch the system back on by using the camera system button once below the speed threshold.

**Note:** Additional camera information can be found in the rear view camera section. See **Rear View Camera** (page 236).

### Using the 180 degree camera system

The 180 degree camera system consists of front and rear cameras. The system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front or behind your vehicle.
- Provides cross traffic view in front of your vehicle.
- Provides visibility during parking maneuvers.



The camera system button is located on the audio unit and allows you to toggle through different camera views.

**Note:** The camera system may not operate correctly if mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. You can clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner or by using your front or rear washer. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 73).

### Camera Views

Press the camera button to toggle between different views.

- **Normal Front View:** Provides an image of what is directly in front your vehicle when your vehicle is in neutral (N) or drive (D).
- **Expanded Front View:** Provides an expanded 180 degree image of what is directly in front your vehicle when your vehicle is in neutral (N) or drive (D).

# Cruise Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (20 mph).

## USING CRUISE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

## Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button.

## Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode. The system also turns off when you switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *The set speed erases when you switch the system off.*

## Setting the Cruise Speed

Drive to the required speed.

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

**SET-**

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** *The set speed appears in the information display.*

## Changing the Set Speed

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.

**SET-**

Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

**Note:** *If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.*

## Canceling the Set Speed

**CAN**

Press the button, or press the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

**Note:** *The set speed is stored.*

**Note:** *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

## Resuming the Set Speed

**RES**

Press to resume the set speed.

# Cruise Control

## Cruise Control Indicator



The indicator appears when you switch the system on.

## USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITHOUT: STOP AND GO



**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).



**WARNING:** Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.



**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



**WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

The system adjusts your vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. You can select four gap settings.

The system uses a radar sensor which projects a beam directly in front of your vehicle.



E262918

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 240).

## Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

**ON**

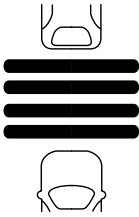
For vehicles without Speed Limiter, press and release the button.



For vehicles with Speed Limiter, press and release the button.

# Cruise Control

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



E164805

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

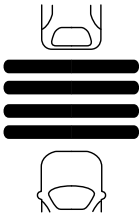
Drive to your preferred speed.



Press and release the button.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



E164805

A vehicle graphic appears in the information display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

## Following a Vehicle



**WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the information display.

**Note:** The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

**Note:** When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- The vehicle speed falls below 20 km/h (12 mph).
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

# Cruise Control

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the information display when the system continues to brake.

## Setting the Gap Distance

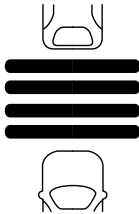
You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.



Press and release to decrease the gap distance.



Press and release to increase the gap distance.



E164805

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image.

**Note:** *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

**Note:** *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

## Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Distance Gap	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

## Overriding the Set Speed



**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

When you override the system, the vehicle graphic disappears from the information display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

## Changing the Set Speed

**RES+**

Press and release to increase the set speed in small increments.

**SET-**

Press and release to decrease the set speed in small increments.

# Cruise Control

Press and hold either button to change the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach your preferred speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

## Canceling the Set Speed

**CNCL** Press and release the button or tap the brake pedal.

**Note:** The system remembers the set speed.

## Resuming the Set Speed

**RES+** Press and release the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

**Note:** Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

## Automatic Cancellation

The system is not functional at vehicle speeds below 20 km/h (12 mph). An audible alarm sounds and the automatic braking releases if the vehicle drops below this speed.

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- The engine speed is too low.
- You apply the parking brake.

**Note:** If the engine speed drops too low, the information display advises you to shift to a lower gear.


## Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

**Note:** An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again after the brakes cool.

## Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

**OFF** For vehicles without Speed Limiter, press and release the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

 For vehicles with Speed Limiter, press and release the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

## Detection Issues



**WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.



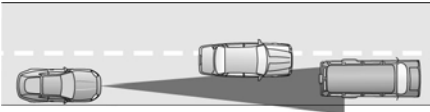
**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



# Cruise Control

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not display if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

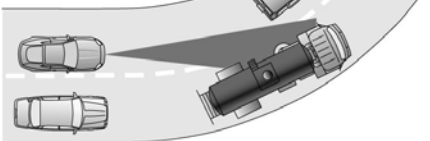
**A**



**B**



**C**



Detection issues can occur:

- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and take action when necessary.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

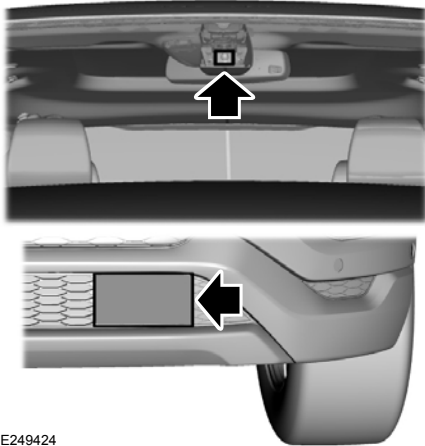
## System Not Available

Conditions that can cause the system to deactivate or prevent the system from activating when requested include:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

# Cruise Control

## Blocked Sensor



A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is in the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

**Note:** You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

**Note:** Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

E249424

## Possible Causes and Actions for This Message Displaying:

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Water, snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
You are in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles and no roadside objects.	Wait for a short time or switch to normal cruise control.

Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.

# Cruise Control

## Switching to Normal Cruise Control



**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.



The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed.

The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

You can change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.

## USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: STOP AND GO



**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).



**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.



**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.



**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

The system adjusts your vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. You can select four gap settings.

The system uses a radar sensor which projects a beam directly in front of your vehicle.

# Cruise Control



E262918

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 240).

## Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

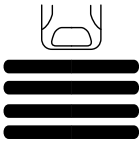


For vehicles without Speed Limiter, press and release the button.



For vehicles with Speed Limiter, press and release the button.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



E164805

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

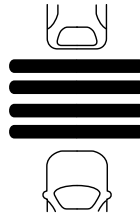
Drive to your preferred speed.



Press and release the button.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



E164805

A vehicle graphic appears in the information display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

**Note:** *When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.*

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.



Press while keeping the brake pedal fully pressed.

The set speed adjusts to 30 km/h (20 mph).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

## Following a Vehicle



**WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Cruise Control



**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the information display.

**Note:** *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

**Note:** *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the information display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

## Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

**RES+**

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press to follow the vehicle ahead. Or press the accelerator pedal.

## Setting the Gap Distance

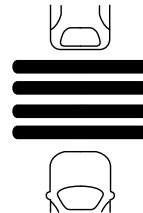
You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.



Press and release to decrease the gap distance.



Press and release to increase the gap distance.



E164805

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image.

**Note:** *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

**Note:** *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

# Cruise Control

## Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Distance Gap	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

## Overriding the Set Speed



**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal normally to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the vehicle graphic disappears from the information display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

## Changing the Set Speed



Press and release to increase the set speed in small increments.



Press and release to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold either button to change the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach your preferred speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

## Canceling the Set Speed



Press and release the button or tap the brake pedal.

**Note:** *The system remembers the set speed.*

## Resuming the Set Speed



Press and release the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

**Note:** *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

## Automatic Cancellation

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

# Cruise Control

## Park Brake Application

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and open the door after you stop the vehicle.
- You hold the vehicle at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.


## Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

**Note:** *An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again after the brakes cool.*


## Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off


**OFF** For vehicles without Speed Limiter, press and release the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

 For vehicles with Speed Limiter, press and release the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

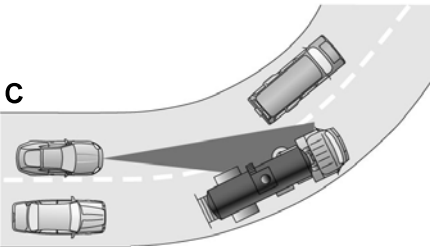
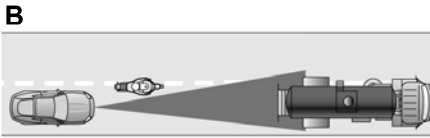
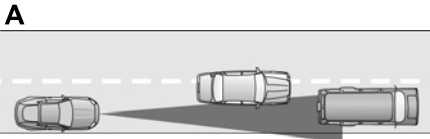
## Detection Issues

 **WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

 **WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not display if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

# Cruise Control



Detection issues can occur:

- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and take action when necessary.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

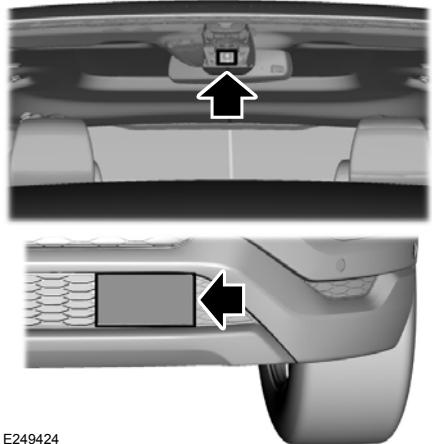
- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

## System Not Available

Conditions that can cause the system to deactivate or prevent the system from activating when requested include:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

## Blocked Sensor



E249424



# Cruise Control

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is in the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

**Note:** You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

**Note:** Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

## Possible Causes and Actions for This Message Displaying:

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Water, snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
You are in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles and no roadside objects.	Wait for a short time or switch to normal cruise control.

Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.

## Switching to Normal Cruise Control



**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.



The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed.

You can change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.

# Driving Aids

## SPEED LIMITER - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

### Principle of Operation



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed becomes the effective maximum speed of your vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

### Using the system

**Note:** *The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period of time if required, for example when overtaking.*

**The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.**



E184571

### Switching the System On and Off

Press LIM CNCL/OFF to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display prompts you to set a speed. Press LIM CNCL/OFF with the limiter in standby mode to turn the system OFF.

### Setting the Speed Limit

- Press SET- with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed. Speed limitation activates and the LIM symbol in the information display shows as green.
- Press RES+ or SET- to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.
- You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the button once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to adjust the set speed in large increments.
- Press LIM CNCL/OFF to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The LIM symbol in the information display shows as grey.
- Press RES+ to resume the limiter. The LIM symbol in the information display shows as green.

### Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Firmly depress the accelerator to temporarily turn the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

### System Warnings

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds.

# Driving Aids

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display flashes.

## Using the Intelligent Speed Limiter

(If Equipped)



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *When driving between countries that use different units of measure (miles per hour or kilometers per hour), there may be a delay before the system changes between speed limit units. During this time, the display screen for the speed limiter may differ from the actual posted speed limit. For best performance, make sure that the navigation SD card is in the navigation media port.*

The system allows you to automatically limit your vehicle speed to the speed limit that is detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition system.

You can change the speed limiter mode between manual and intelligent in the information display. See **General Information** (page 109).

You can select a permanent set speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit through the tolerance menu in the information display. See **General Information** (page 109).

## Switching the System On and Off

Press LIM CNCL/OFF to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display prompts you to set a speed or show the detected speed limit as the set speed. The Intelligent Speed Limiter does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode. The Auto LIM symbol and set speed indication show as grey in standby mode. Press LIM CNCL/OFF with the limiter in standby mode to switch the system off.

## Setting the Speed Limit

- Press Res+ with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the detected speed limit. Speed limitation activates and the Auto LIM symbol shows as green.
- Press SET- with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed. Speed limitation activates and the Auto LIM symbol shows as green.
- Press RES+ or SET- to gradually change the current set speed to your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.
- You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the button once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to adjust the set speed in large increments.
- Press LIM CNCL/OFF to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The Auto LIM symbol shows as grey.

# Driving Aids

- Press RES+ to resume the limiter. The Auto LIM symbol shows as green.
- The limit speed adapts to the speed limit detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition system. The Intelligent Speed Limiter does not react to speed limits shown with a supplementary sign by the Traffic Sign Recognition system. If there is no speed limit information available, the limiter switches to standby mode.

## Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Firmly depress the accelerator pedal to temporarily turn the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

## System Warnings

If the set speed is automatically set to a lower value than your current vehicle speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds if you are continuously exceeding the set speed.

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display flashes.

If the Traffic Sign Recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, an audible warning tone sounds and the system switches to standby mode.

## SPEED LIMITER - VEHICLES WITH: CRUISE CONTROL

### Principle of Operation



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed becomes the effective maximum speed of your vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

### Using the Speed Limiter

**Note:** *The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period of time if required, for example when overtaking.*

**The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.**



E191232

# Driving Aids

## Switching the System On and Off

Press LIM to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display prompts you to set a speed. Press LIM again to switch the system off.

## Setting the Speed Limiter

- Press SET+ or SET- with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed. The LIM symbol in the information display shows as green.
- Press SET+ or SET- to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.
- You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the button once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to adjust the set speed in large increments.
- Press CNCL to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The LIM symbol in the information display shows as grey.
- Press RES to resume the limiter. The LIM symbol shows as green.

## Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Firmly depress the accelerator pedal to temporarily switch the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

## System Warnings

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display flashes.

## Using the Intelligent Speed Limiter

(If Equipped)



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *When driving between countries that use different units of measure (miles per hour or kilometers per hour), there may be a delay before the system changes between speed limit units. During this time, the display screen for the speed limiter may differ from the actual posted speed limit. For best performance, make sure that the navigation SD card is in the navigation media port.*

The system allows you to automatically limit your vehicle speed to the speed limit that is detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition system.

You can change the speed limiter mode between manual and intelligent in the information display. See **General Information** (page 106).

You can select a permanent set speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit through the tolerance menu in the information display. See **General Information** (page 106).

# Driving Aids

## Switching the System On and Off

Press LIM to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display prompts you to set a speed or show the detected speed limit as the set speed. The Intelligent Speed Limiter does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode. The Auto LIM symbol and set speed indication show as grey in standby mode. Press LIM with the limiter in standby mode to switch the system off.

## Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Firmly depress the accelerator pedal to temporarily switch the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

## Setting the Speed Limiter

- Press RES with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the detected speed limit. Speed limitation activates and the Auto LIM symbol shows as green.
- Press SET- with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed. Speed limitation activates and the Auto LIM symbol shows as green.
- Press SET+ or SET- to gradually change the current set speed to your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.
- You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the button once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to adjust the set speed in large increments.
- Press CNCL to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The Auto LIM symbol shows as grey.

- Press RES to resume the limiter. The Auto LIM symbol shows as green.
- The limit speed adapts to the speed limit detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition system. The Intelligent Speed Limiter does not react to speed limits shown with a supplementary sign by the Traffic Sign Recognition system. If there is no speed limit information available, the limiter switches to standby mode.

## System Warnings

If the set speed is automatically set to a lower value than your current vehicle speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds if you are continuously exceeding the set speed.

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display flashes.

If the Traffic Sign Recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, an audible warning tone sounds and the system switches to standby mode.

## DRIVER ALERT

### Principle of Operation



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

# Driving Aids



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



**WARNING:** Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

**Note:** *The system assists you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.*

**Note:** *The system calculates an alertness level at vehicle speeds above approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).*

The system monitors your driving behavior.

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

## Using Driver Alert

### Switching the System On and Off

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 106).

**Note:** *The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.*

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

### System Warnings

**Note:** *The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).*

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the information display until you cancel it. See **Information Messages** (page 111).

Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to remove the warning.


### Resetting the System


You can reset the system by:


- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping your vehicle and then opening and closing the driver door.


# Driving Aids


## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM


 **WARNING:** The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.


 **WARNING:** Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.


 **WARNING:** At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

 **WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

 **WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

 **WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The sensor is located near the rear view mirror.

**Note:** The system works above 64 km/h (40 mph).

**Note:** The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.

**Note:** The system may not function if the camera is blocked or there is damage to the windshield.

**Note:** When Aid mode is on and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system will alert you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.

The system notifies you to stay in your lane through the steering system and the instrument cluster display when the front camera detects an unintentional drift out of your lane is likely to occur. The system automatically detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior rear view mirror.

### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** The system on or off setting is stored until it is manually changed, unless a MyKey is detected. If the system detects a MyKey it defaults to on and the mode is set to Alert.

**Note:** If a MyKey is detected, pressing the button will not affect the on or off status of the system.



Press the button on the steering wheel stalk to switch the system on or off.

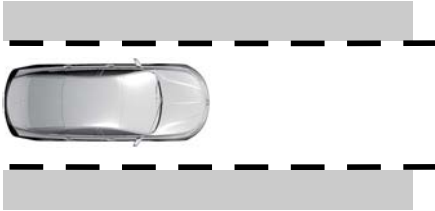


# Driving Aids

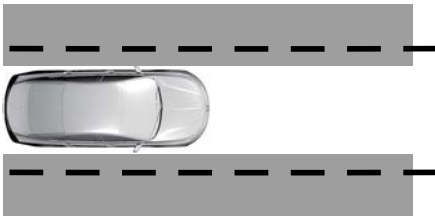
## System Settings

The system has optional setting menus available. The system stores the last-known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you turn on the system.

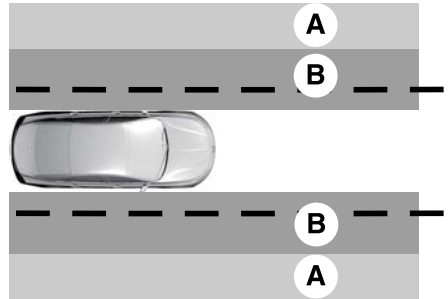
**Mode:** This setting allows you to select which of the system features you can enable.



Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



Aid only – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



A Alert

B Aid

Alert + Aid – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.

**Note:** *The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not provide exact zone parameters.*

**Intensity:** This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. This setting does not affect the aid mode.

- Low
- Normal
- High

# Driving Aids

## System Display



E151660

When you switch on the system, an overhead graphic of a vehicle with lane markings will display in the information display. If you select aid mode when you switch on the system, a separate white icon will also appear or in some vehicles arrows will display with the lane markings.

When you switch off the system, the lane marking graphics will not display.

While the system is on, the color of the lane markings will change to indicate the system status.

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side(s). This may be because:

- Your vehicle is under the activation speed.
- The turn indicator is active.

## Troubleshooting

**Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?**

Vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature

Sun is shining directly into the camera lens

Quick intentional lane change

- Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver.
- The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field-of-view.
- The camera is obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental conditions (significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain or fog), traffic conditions (following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane), or vehicle conditions (poor headlamp illumination).

See **Troubleshooting** for additional information.

Green: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention, on the indicated side(s).

Yellow: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

The system can be temporarily suppressed at any time by the following:

- Quick braking.
- Fast acceleration.
- Using the turn signal indicator.
- Evasive steering maneuver.

# Driving Aids

<b>Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?</b>
Staying too close to the lane marking
Driving at high speeds in curves
The last Alert warning or Aid intervention occurred a short time ago
Ambiguous lane markings (mainly in construction zones)
Rapid transition from light to dark or vice versa
Sudden offset in lane markings
ABS or AdvanceTrac activation
Camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield
Driving too close to the vehicle in front of you
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa
Standing water on the road
Faint lane markings (partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads)
Lane width too narrow or too wide
Camera not calibrated after a windshield replacement
Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads

<b>Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode?</b>
High cross winds
Large road crown
Rough roads, grooves, shoulder drop-offs
Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure
If the tires have been exchanged (including snow tires), or the suspension has been modified

# Driving Aids

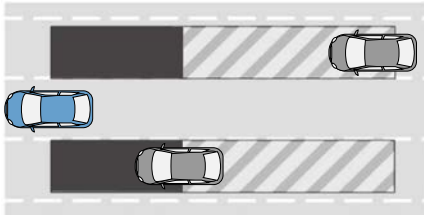
## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM



**WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.

**Note:** The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.

### Using the Blind Spot Information System

#### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

**Note:** The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

#### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

**Note:** The system does not operate in reverse (R).

### System Lights and Messages

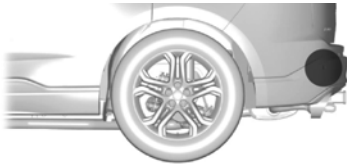


# Driving Aids

When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

**Note:** *The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

## Blocked Sensors



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

**Note:** *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors become blocked, a message may appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 111). The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

## System Errors

If the system detects a fault, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 111).

## Switching the System On and Off


You can switch the system off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 106). When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.


**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

**Note:** *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

 **WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides when you shift into reverse (R).

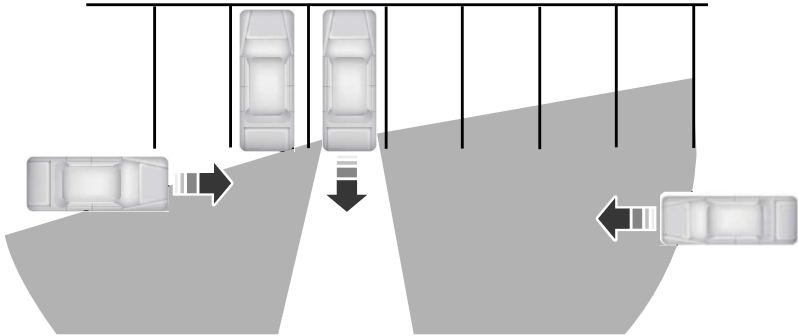
# Driving Aids

## Using the Cross Traffic Alert System

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach with a speed up to 60 km/h (37 mph). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully

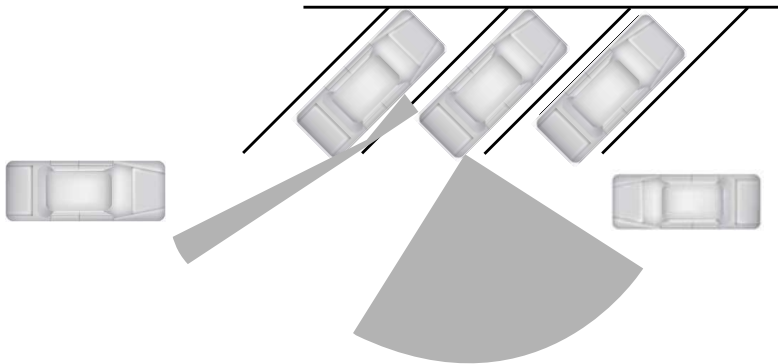
obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.

# Driving Aids



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

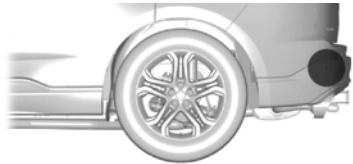
## System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts



When the system detects a vehicle, an indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display.

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing in the distance.*

## Blocked Sensors



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

**Note:** *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

# Driving Aids

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R). See **Information Messages** (page 111).

## System Limitations

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

## System Errors

If the system detects a fault a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 111).

## Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch the system off using the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 111). When you switch system off, a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 111).

**Note:** The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on and you shift into reverse (R). If you temporarily switch the system off, it turns on the next time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

### Principle of Operation



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

**Note:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

**Note:** Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not correctly function.

**Note:** Always replace headlamp bulbs with those specifically designed for your vehicle. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

**Note:** The system may not detect all traffic signs and may incorrectly read signs.

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions for example bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system is designed to detect traffic signs meeting the Vienna convention.



# Driving Aids

**Note:** *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

The sensor is behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors road signs to inform you of the current maximum speed limit and overtaking regulations.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.

## Using Traffic Sign Recognition

### Setting the System Speed Warning

The system has a number of speed warning levels that you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 106).

### System Display



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the information display.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in four stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.

3. After a predetermined distance they are greyed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they are deleted.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

### Switching Speed Warning On and Off

You can switch the speed warning on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 106).

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

## ECO

### Principle of Operation

The system is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently. See **Driving Economically** (page 292).

**Note:** *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. See **Fuel Consumption** (page 192).*

**Note:** *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

### Eco Mode System Display

You can view the instantaneous efficiency level or the trip summary in the information display.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.

# Driving Aids

2. Select **Display settings**.
3. Select **Eco coach**.
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## Instantaneous Efficiency Level

The display circle illuminates as the instantaneous efficiency level increases. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.


## Trip Summary


You can check the trip summary status for acceleration, deceleration and speed during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip in the information display.


## Checking Trip Summary Status


1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Select screens**.
3. Select **Eco behaviour**.
4. Select the screen on your main screen. See **General Information** (page 106).


## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

 **WARNING:** The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

 **WARNING:** In situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability, this may reduce system performance. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians, partly obscured pedestrians, or pedestrians that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

The pre-collision assist system is active when your vehicle reaches a speed greater than approximately 5 km/h (3 mph). Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).

**Note:** *The system is not designed to detect animals.*

# Driving Aids

**Note:** *The system is not designed to detect vehicles or cyclists that are traveling in a different direction.*



E156130

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle or cyclist traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality:

- Alert.
- Brake support.
- Active braking.

**Alert:** When activated, a warning lamp flashes and an audible warning sounds.

**Brake support:** The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

**Active braking:** The system may apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash completely.

Switch active braking on or off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 106).

## Distance Alert

A warning lamp illuminates if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

**Note:** *The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.*

Adjust the distance alert sensitivity setting using the information display. See **General Information** (page 106).

## Distance Indication

A graphical indication displays the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

**Note:** *The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.*

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 25 m (82.0 ft)	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m (55.8–82.0 ft)	0.6–0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 17 m (55.8 ft).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

## Switching Distance Indication On or Off

Switch distance indication on or off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 106).

# Driving Aids

## Pre-Collision Assist System Sensors



E243054

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

## Pre-Collision Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The radar sensor is behind the front grille below the license plate.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message may appear in the information display.

## Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp



It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

It illuminates when the system is not available.

# Driving Aids

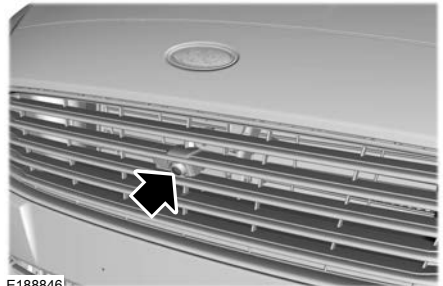
**The following table lists possible causes and actions for when a blocked sensor message may display.**

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve.
The radar is misaligned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.
Excessive heat around the camera.	Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.

## FRONT VIEW CAMERA



**WARNING:** The camera system is a supplement system that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out the windows and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



The front view camera is located in the grille.

# Driving Aids

## Using the Front View Camera

The front view camera provides an image of the area in front of your vehicle.

To use the front video camera system, place the transmission in any gear except reverse (R). An image of the front of your vehicle appears once you press the camera enable button and your vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).

**Note:** *The area displayed on the screen may vary according to your vehicle's orientation or road condition.*

**Note:** *The front view camera will switch off if your vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph). You will have to switch the system back on by using the enable button once below the speed threshold.*



The camera button is located on the audio unit.

## Camera Views

Press the camera button to toggle between different views.

- Front Normal View: Provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.
- Front Split View: Provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle. Access this view by pressing the camera button from the Front Normal View screen.

## DRIVE CONTROL

### Driver Select Suspension

Driver select suspension delivers a unique driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems continuously monitor your driving inputs and the road conditions to optimize ride comfort, steering and handling.

Driver select suspension consists of the following systems:

- Continuously controlled damping dynamically adjusts the shock absorbers stiffness in real time to match the road surface and driver inputs. This system continuously monitors your vehicle's motion (roll, pitch, bounce), suspension position, load, speed, road conditions, and steering to adjust the suspension damping for optimal vehicle control.
- Electronically power-assisted steering adjusts steering effort and feel based on your vehicle speed and your inputs.
- Adaptive steering optimizes your vehicle's steering response based on your steering wheel input, changes in vehicle speed, or other conditions.

You can configure which of the modes are active from the main menu on the information display. See **General Information** (page 106).

Modes:

- Comfort – Provides a more relaxed driving experience, maximizing comfort. Your steering effort decreases and the suspension movement is more fluid. Comfort mode is ideal when you desire enhanced traveling comfort.
- Normal – Delivers a balanced combination of comfortable, controlled ride and confident handling. This mode provides an engaging drive experience and a direct connection to the road without sacrificing any of the composure demanded from your vehicle.
- Sport – Provides a sportier driving experience. The suspension stiffens, with an emphasis on handling and control. The engine responds more directly to your inputs. Sport mode is ideal for use during more spirited driving.

# Driving Aids

---

**Note:** *The Drive Control has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. Certain types of system errors will gray out the mode selections within the information display, preventing you from changing states when the gear position is changed. Other types of errors will produce a temporary message that states a malfunction. If either condition persists for multiple key cycles, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

# Local Hazard Information

---

## WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

## LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## CHECKING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION STATUS

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist**.
2. Select **Local hazard info**.

## ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

**Note:** Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 376).

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch **Vehicle connectivity** on.
5. Switch **Location** on.
6. Switch **Vehicle data & Remote ctrl** on.
7. Switch **Live Traffic** on.
8. Switch **Local hazard information** on.



# Load Carrying

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**WARNING:** Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

**WARNING:** Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

**Note:** When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.

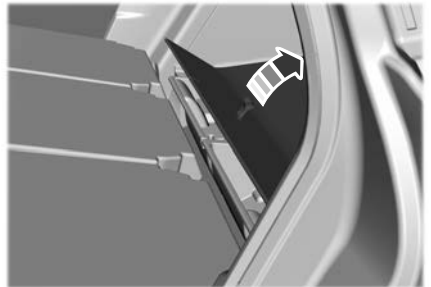
## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



E202759

## REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

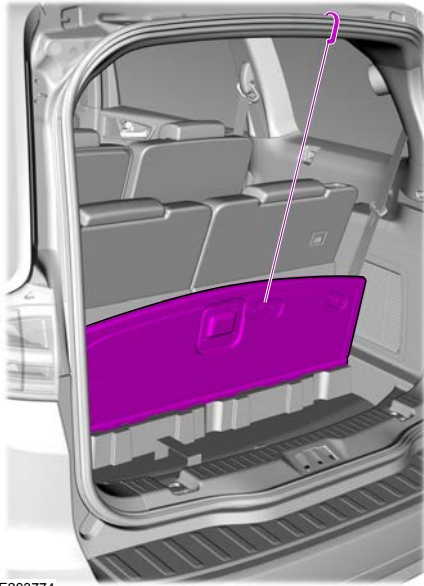
### In-Floor Storage - Second Row



In-floor storage is located behind the second row of seats in the cargo area. Lift the handle to open.

# Load Carrying

## Load Floor Storage (If Equipped)



E203774

Raise the loadspace floor to gain access to the storage compartment.

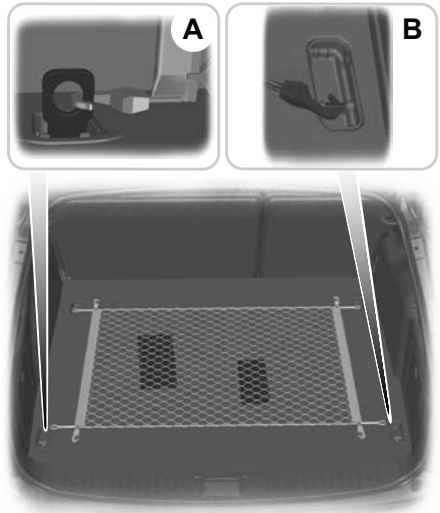
## CARGO NETS



**WARNING:** This net is not designed to restrain objects during a collision or heavy braking.

### Cargo Net - Cargo Floor Net (If Equipped)

The cargo net secures lightweight objects in the cargo area. Attach the net to the anchors provided. Repeat the attachment on both sides of the vehicle.



E78835

- A With load retaining fixtures.
- B Without load retaining fixtures.

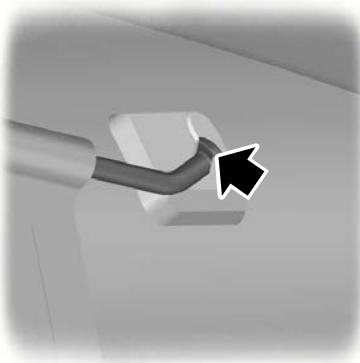
### Cargo Net - Loadnet (If Equipped)

**Note:** The cargo net can only be placed behind the second row seat.

The cargo net cannot be used in conjunction with a tonneau cover.

# Load Carrying

## Installing the Net



E87052

1. Push the ends of the upper bar toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the headliner. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.



E203022

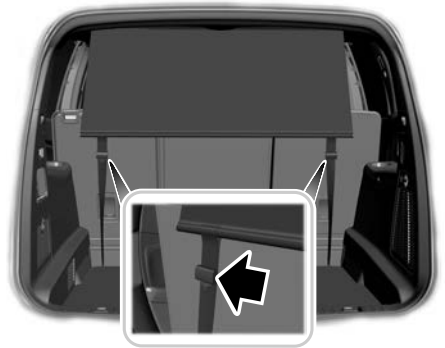
3. Tighten the belts.

## Removing the Net



E203021

2. Attach the net to the luggage anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 277).



E203020

1. Release the belts.
2. Remove the net from the luggage anchor points.
3. Remove the upper bars.

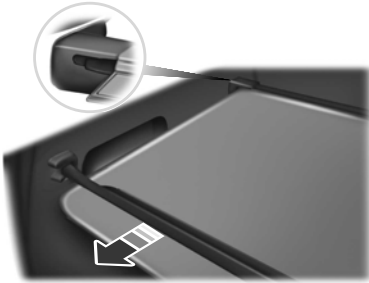
# Load Carrying

## LUGGAGE COVERS

**WARNING:** Make sure that the posts are properly latched in mounting features. The cover may cause injury in a sudden stop or accident if it is not securely installed.

**WARNING:** Do not place any objects on the cargo area shade. They may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of your vehicle in a sudden stop or crash.

Use the cargo shade to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.



Insert the ends of the cargo shade into the mounting features located behind the rear seat on the rear trim panels to install the cargo shade.

To operate the cargo shade:

1. Pull the rear edge of the cargo shade rearward.
2. Secure both ends of the support rod into the retention slots located on the rear quarter trim panels.

## ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

**WARNING:** If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.

**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack, is:

- 165 pounds (75 kilograms) for vehicles without a moonroof
- 132 pounds (60 kilograms) for vehicles with a moonroof.

**Note:** *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

For correct roof rack system function, you must place loads directly on crossbars affixed to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend you use Ford Genuine Accessory crossbars designed specifically for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

# Load Carrying

## Towbar Carriers

When using a towbar attached carrier, consider the following:

- Do not exceed the maximum vertical weight on the towball (weight of the carrier plus weight of the load).
- Pay attention to the carrier manufacturer's specifications.
- If you are using a bike carrier, the maximum number of allowed bikes is three, with a maximum allowed weight of 60 kg (130 lb).
- Load the heaviest item closest to the vehicle.

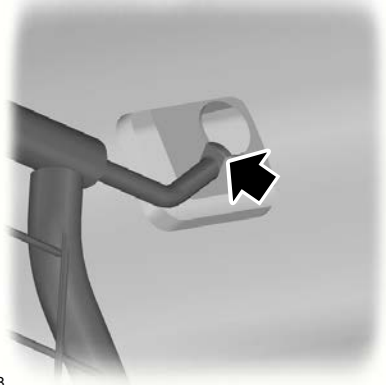
## DOG GUARD



**WARNING:** Leave at least 1 cm (0.4 in) space between the dog guard and the seats in front of it.

**Note:** *Passengers should not sit in the row of seats directly behind the installed dog guard.*

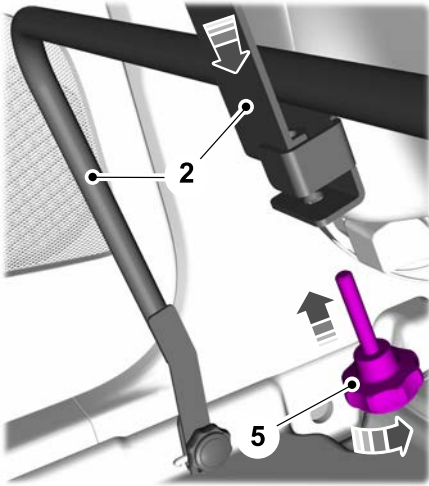
## Installing behind the front seats



E86848

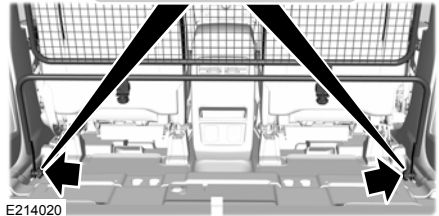
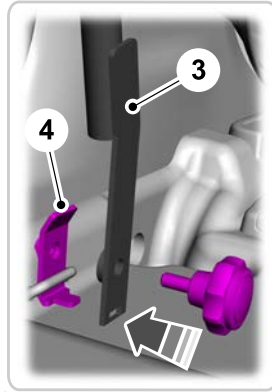
1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.

# Load Carrying



E214021

2. Attach the grille to the lower bar with the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.

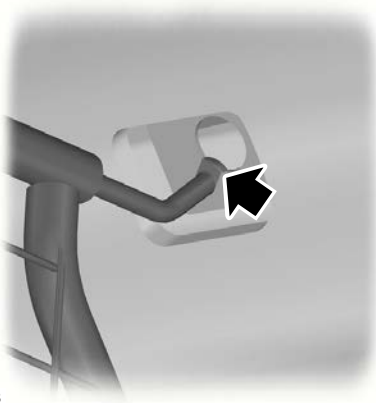


E214020

3. Attach the dog guard to the lower anchor points using the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.
4. Tighten the handwheels at the lower anchor points.
5. Tighten the handwheels at the grille-lower bar attachment points.

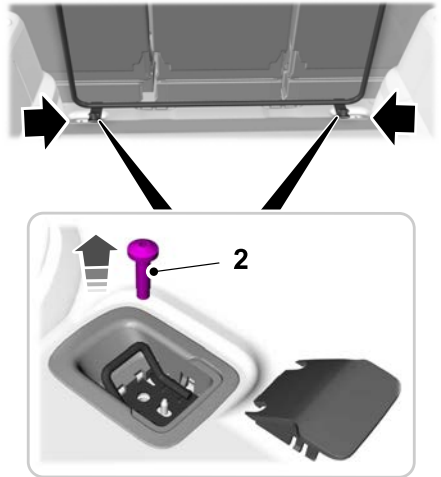
# Load Carrying

## Installing behind the rear seats



E86848

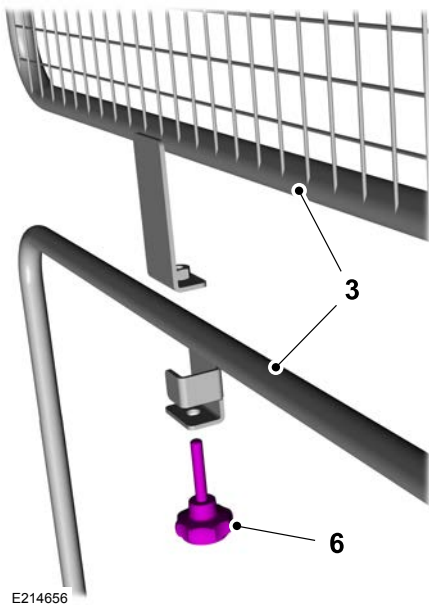
1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.



E214657

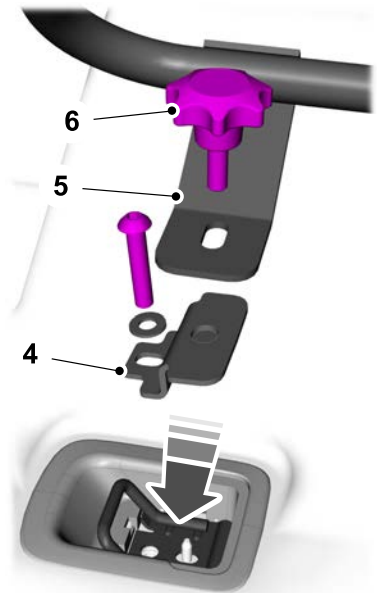
2. Remove the screw from each of the luggage anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 277).

## Load Carrying



E214656

3. Attach the grille to the lower bar with the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.



E214655

4. Attach the floor bracket to the luggage anchor point and secure with the new supplied screw and washer.
  5. Attach the dog guard lower bar bracket to the floor bracket with handwheel.
  6. Tighten the handwheels.
- Remove in the reverse order.



# Towing

## TOWING A TRAILER



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum gross train weight stated on your vehicle identification plate. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 368).



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum permissible trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball) as stated in the vehicle specification chart. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 364).



**WARNING:** The anti-lock braking system does not control the overrun brake on the trailer. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, place the load in your trailer toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 364).

- The trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball), is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.
- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 364).
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 286).
- Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

**Note:** *The maximum permissible trailer nose weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer nose weight may be lower.*

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,280 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions, the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,280 ft), you must reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every extra 1,000 m (3,280 ft).

**Note:** *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have tow bars fitted. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

# Towing

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control warning lamp flashes and a message appears in the information display. The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 364). See **Load Carrying** (page 277).

**Note:** This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.

**Note:** This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.

**Note:** In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.

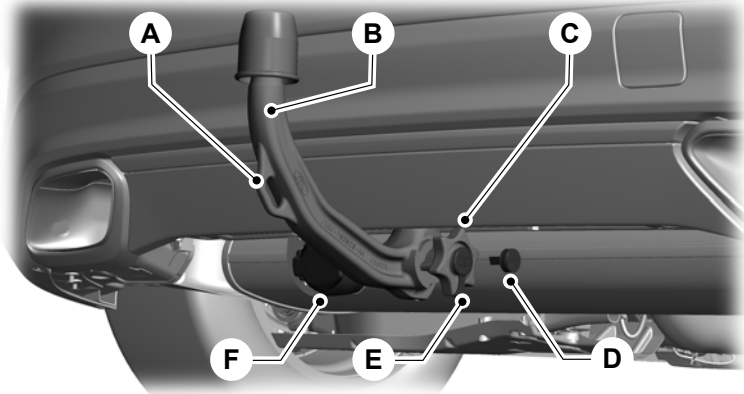
## TOW BALL - VEHICLES WITH: DETACHABLE TOW BALL



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.



E269049

- A Trailer safety cable attachment point.
- B Tow ball arm in tow position.
- C Handwheel.
- D Key.

# Towing

- E Protective cap.
- F Trailer wiring connection socket.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.

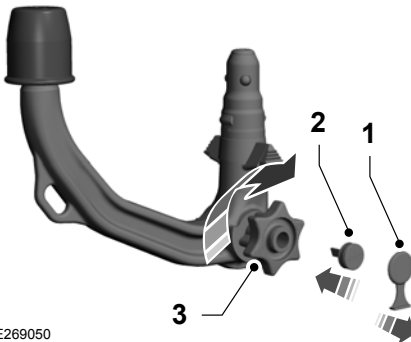
## Detaching the Tow Ball Arm

**WARNING:** Always place the tow ball arm in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

You must detach the tow ball arm when not in use. Securely stow the tow ball arm in the luggage compartment.

Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.

Do not use any tools to detach the tow ball arm.



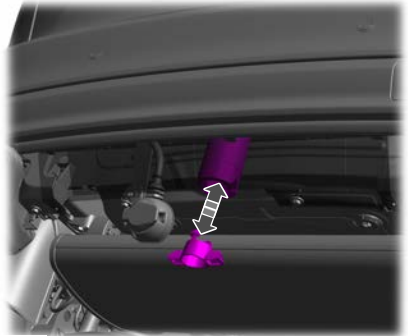
E269050

1. Remove the protective cap.
2. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to unlock the handwheel.

3. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel outward and turn it fully clockwise until it clicks.

**Note:** The red mark on the handwheel must be within the green line on the tow ball arm.

4. Release the handwheel.
5. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket upward through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.



E265433

7. Insert the blanking plug.

## Attaching the Tow Ball Arm

Do not use any tools to attach the tow ball arm.

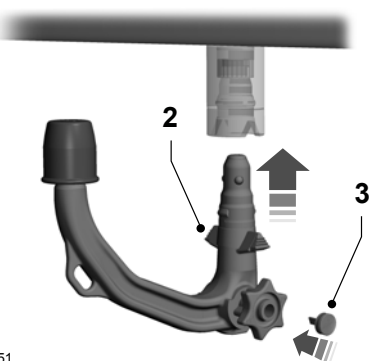
**Note:** You can only attach the tow ball arm if it is unlocked.

# Towing



E265433

1. Remove the blanking plug.



E269051

2. Fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages. Do not hold the handwheel.

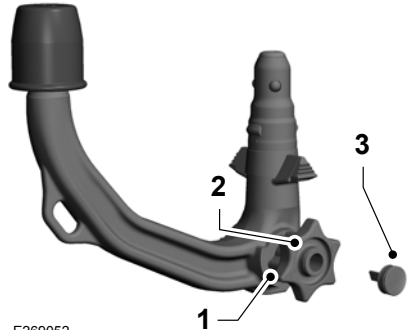
**Note:** *The green mark on the handwheel must be within the green line on the tow ball arm.*

3. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to lock the handwheel.
4. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.

5. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket downward through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.

## Tow Ball Arm Safety Checks

After you attach the tow ball arm, check the following:



E269052

1. The green mark on the handwheel is within the green line on the tow ball arm.
2. You have locked the handwheel.
3. You have removed the key.

Do not use the tow ball arm if any of these cannot be met. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Tow Ball Arm Guidelines

- Replacement keys are available. We recommend that you record the key number on the lock cylinder.
- Keep the system clean. Periodically lubricate bearings, sliding surfaces and locking balls with resin-free grease or oil. Lubricate the lock with graphite.

# Towing

- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Regularly clean the trailer wiring connection socket and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you detach the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.

## TOW BALL - VEHICLES WITH: RETRACTABLE TOW BALL



**WARNING:** An audible warning tone sounds when the tow ball arm is not in the fully stowed position or in proper towing position. If the audible warning tone does not sound when the tow ball arm moves or when the system switches on, do not use the tow bar. See an authorized dealer.



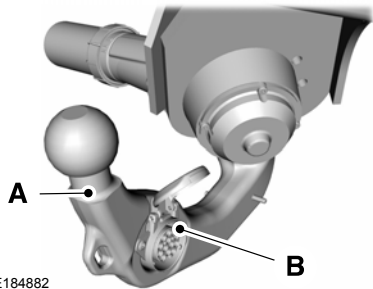
**WARNING:** Do not touch the tow ball arm when it is moving.



**WARNING:** Make sure there are no obstacles preventing the tow ball arm from moving.

**Note:** We recommend keeping the tow ball arm in the stowed position when you are not using it. In addition, consider local regulations and insurance terms.

**Note:** Remove any adapter from the tow bar socket. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the socket. Clean the tow bar socket regularly and make sure no dirt prevents the socket lid from closing properly.



E184882

- A Tow ball arm.
- B 13-pin trailer socket.

## Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm

**Note:** Do not attach any plug to the 13-pin trailer socket.

**Note:** Make sure the vehicle battery has a full charge.

**Note:** The vehicle has to be stationary for the tow ball arm to operate.

**Note:** If something is blocking the tow ball arm during its swivel process, the system tries to reverse. If the tow ball arm stops before it is fully in towing position or stowed position, restart the swivel process by pressing the button twice.

## Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm Out

**Note:** If the tow ball arm does not operate, but you hear an audible double tone (low pitch followed by a high pitch), switch on the ignition for 10 seconds, and then press the brake pedal and try operating the tow ball arm again.

1. Press the button. An audible double tone (low pitch followed by a high pitch) sounds to let you know the system is operating.

# Towing

2. Press the button again within four seconds to swivel the tow ball arm. A series of audible tones sounds and the LED flashes while the tow ball arm swivels.
3. When the tow ball arm finishes swiveling, the LED stops flashing and an audible double tone (high pitch followed by a low pitch) sounds.

The tow ball arm is ready for use when it finishes swiveling into the towing position.

## Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm In

Before swiveling the tow ball arm in:

- Unhitch the trailer or dismantle load carriers and their attachments.
- Dismantle attachments for tracking stabilization.
- Remove the plug for the trailer power supply and the adapter from the trailer socket. Failure to do so may cause damage to the bumper when the tow ball arm swivels into its stowed position.

To start swiveling the tow ball arm in, press the swivel button twice within four seconds.

The tow ball arm swivels into the stowed position automatically.

## Tow Ball Arm Fault Conditions

If the LED on the swivel button is rapidly flashing and an audible tone sequence (high pitch) sounds, repeat the swivel process. If this does not resolve the problem, see an authorized dealer.

A message may appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 111).

## Driving with a Trailer



**WARNING:** In the event of a vehicle breakdown, disconnect the trailer before towing the vehicle.



**WARNING:** If any of the conditions below cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician. Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is properly locked.

Check that:

- There is a last audible low pitch tone when the locking procedure finishes.
- The tow ball arm properly locks. Make sure it does not move when jerked.

## Maintenance

**Note:** *The towing hitch and control unit are maintenance-free. Do not grease or oil these components.*

**Note:** *Do not attempt to service the towing hitch. Only the manufacturer should carry out repairs or dismantle the hitch.*

**Note:** *When cleaning the vehicle with a steam jet, do not direct the high-pressure jet directly onto the swivel joint of the tow ball arm and socket. After cleaning the vehicle, unplug the connector or open the trailer socket to make sure no water entered. If water is present, dry the socket.*

# Towing

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.



**WARNING:** Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.



**WARNING:** When towing your vehicle you must select neutral. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Do not exceed 50 km/h (31 mph).

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 299).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

# Driving Hints

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately  $-25^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-13^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).

## BREAKING-IN

### Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

### Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

## DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.

- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

## DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



## Driving Hints



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

### FLOOR MATS

**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install the floor mats, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

**Note:** Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.

# Roadside Emergencies

## HAZARD FLASHERS



The hazard flasher switch is on the instrument panel.

Use the hazard flashers if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

### Switching the Hazard Flashers On or Off



Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on.

Press the button again to switch the hazard flashers off.

**Note:** All direction indicators flash.

**Note:** Prolonged use of the hazard flashers could cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, if you heavily brake, the hazard flashers could turn on.

### Hazard Flasher Indicator



Flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

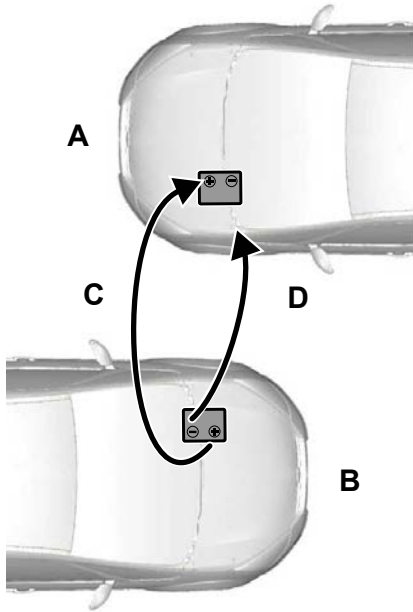


**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

# Roadside Emergencies

## To Connect the Booster Cables



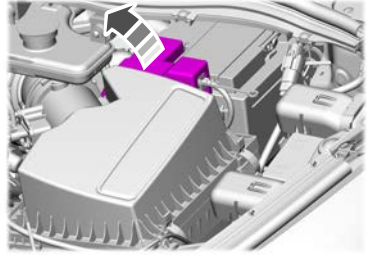
- A Flat battery vehicle.
- B Booster battery vehicle.
- C Positive connection cable.
- D Negative connection cable.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

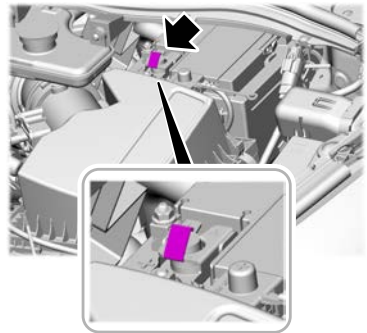
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

1. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.



E273802

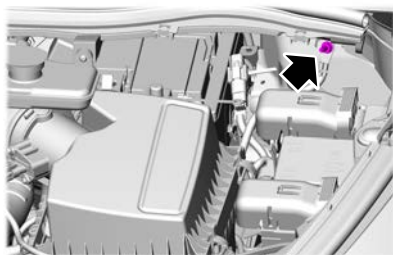
2. Remove the positive (+) terminal cover.



E273803


3. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal tab of the discharged battery. Do not connect the positive (+) cable to anything other than the connection point shown.


# Roadside Emergencies



E273804

4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to the connection point as shown. Do not connect the negative (-) cable to anything other than the connection point shown.

 **WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

 **WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.


## To Start the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

 **WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

Do not attempt to push start your vehicle. You may cause transmission damage.

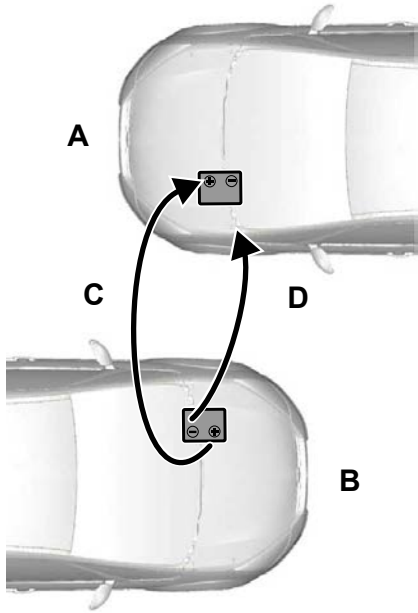
**Note:** Do not disconnect the 12 volt battery from your vehicle electrical system.

## Preparing Your Vehicle

1. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
2. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

# Roadside Emergencies

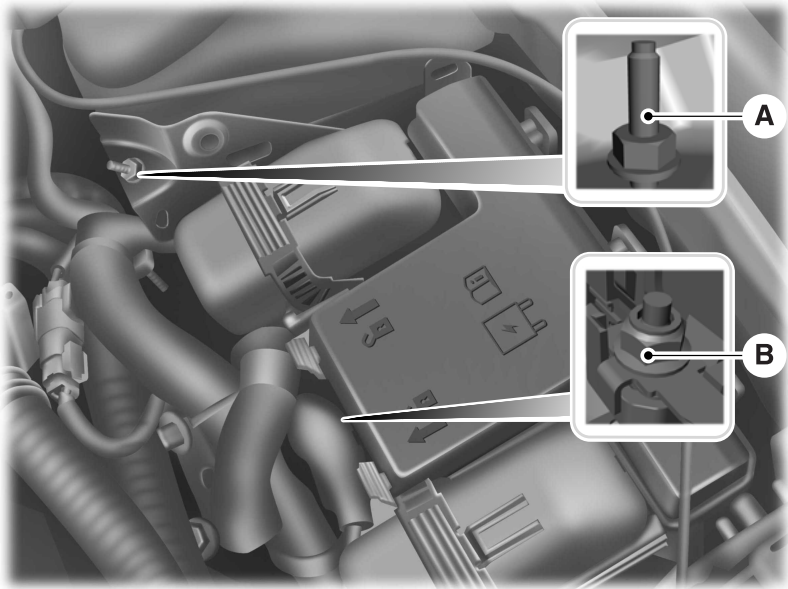
## To Connect the Booster Cables



- A Vehicle with low charge battery.
- B Booster battery vehicle.
- C Positive connection cable.
- D Negative connection cable.

Your vehicle has two battery connections that are accessible from under the hood, even though the actual battery is located in the trunk. Your vehicle can be jumped the same way conventional vehicles can be using these connections. The illustration below shows the two connections used for jump-starting your vehicle.

# Roadside Emergencies



E175005

- A Ground point (-).
- B Positive connection (+).



**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

1. Remove the red cap from the positive connection (B) on your vehicle before connecting the cables.
2. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable C). Battery positions may vary.

3. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the ground point of vehicle A (cable D).

## To Start Your Vehicle

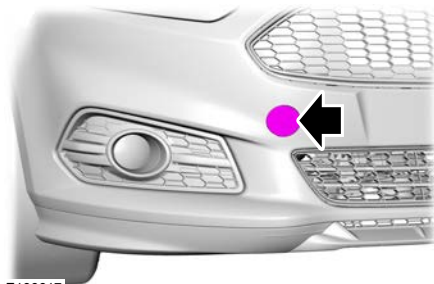
1. Run the engine of vehicle B at a moderately high speed.
2. Start the disabled vehicle. Check the instrument cluster for the Ready to Drive light as the gasoline engine may not start, but the electric motor may be running.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

# Roadside Emergencies

**Note:** Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

## TOWING POINTS

### Front Towing Point

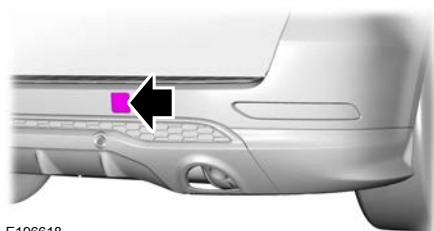


E196617

1. Gently press and release the towing eye attachment point cover at the position indicated.
2. Gently pull it straight out.

**Note:** The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

### Rear Towing Point





E196618

1. Gently press and release the towing eye attachment point cover at the position indicated.
2. Gently pull it straight out.

**Note:** The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

### Attaching the Towing Eye

 **WARNING:** Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.



E265230

1. Carefully remove the front or rear towing eye attachment point cover.
2. Install the towing eye.

**Note:** It has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

### What Is the Post-Crash Alert System

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

### How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on and to intermittently sound the horn in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

### Post-Crash Alert System Limitations

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

### Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off

Press the hazard flasher switch or the unlock button on the remote control to switch the system off.

**Note:** *The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.*

## AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

### What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

**Note:** *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

## Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

## Re-Enabling Your Vehicle

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

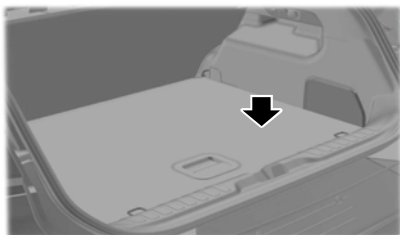
**Note:** *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*



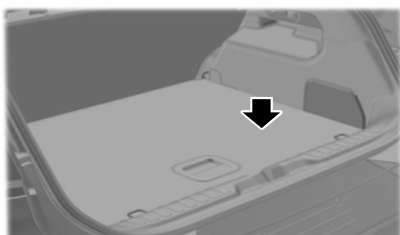
# Emergency Equipment

---

## STORING A FIRST AID KIT



## STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE



# Fuses

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### Power Distribution Box



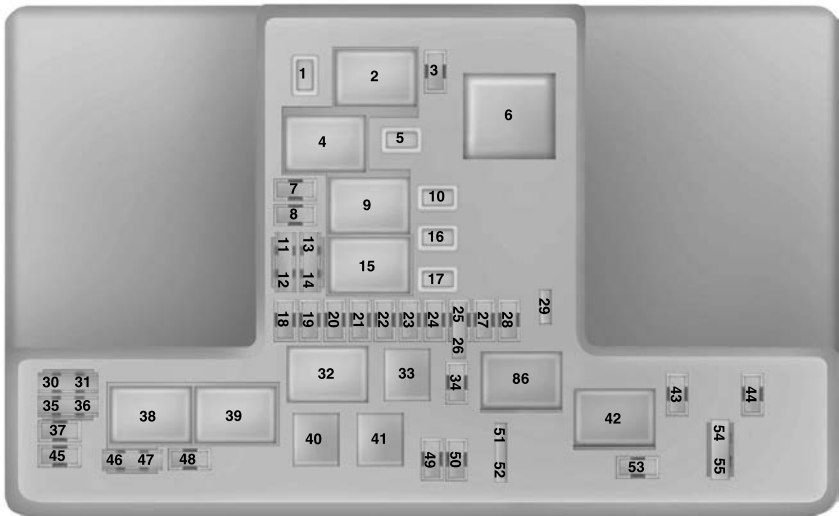
**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, some features need to be reset. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 333).



# Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	25A <sup>3</sup>	Wiper motor.
2	—	Starter relay.
3	15A <sup>1</sup>	Rear wiper. Rain sensor
4	—	Blower motor relay.
5	20A <sup>3</sup>	Power point 3 - Back of console.
6	—	Auxiliary heater #2 relay.
7	20A <sup>1</sup>	Powertrain control module - vehicle power 1.
8	20A <sup>1</sup>	Powertrain control module - vehicle power 2.
9	—	Powertrain control module relay.
10	20A <sup>3</sup>	Power point 1 - driver front.
11	15A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module - vehicle power 4.
12	15A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module - vehicle power 3.
13	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
14	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
15	—	Run-start relay.
16	20A <sup>3</sup>	Power point 2 - console.
17	20A <sup>3</sup>	Power point 4 - luggage compartment.
18	10A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
19	10A <sup>1</sup>	Run-start electronic power assist steering.
20	10A <sup>1</sup>	Run/start lighting.
21	15A <sup>1</sup>	Run/start transmission control. Transmission oil pump start/stop.

# Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
22	10A <sup>1</sup>	Air conditioner clutch solenoid.
23	15A <sup>1</sup>	Run-start. Blind spot information system. Rear view camera. Adaptive cruise control. Heads-up display. Voltage stability module.
24	10A <sup>1</sup>	Run-start 7.
25	10A <sup>2</sup>	Run-start anti-lock brake system.
26	10A <sup>2</sup>	Run-start powertrain control module.
27	—	Not used.
28	10A <sup>1</sup>	Rear washer pump.
29	—	Not used.
30	—	Not used.
31	—	Not used.
32	—	Electronic fan 1 relay.
33	—	A/C clutch relay.
34	15A <sup>1</sup>	Electric steering column lock.
35	—	Not used.
36	—	Not used.
37	—	Not used.
38	—	Electronic fan 2 relay
39	—	Electric fan 2 and 3 relay.
40	—	Headlamp washer relay.
41	—	Horn relay.
42	—	Fuel pump relay.
43	10A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).

# Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
44	5A <sup>1</sup>	Heated washer nozzle.
45	—	Not used.
46	10A <sup>2</sup>	Alternator sensor.
47	10A <sup>2</sup>	Brake on/off switch.
48	20A <sup>1</sup>	Horn.
49	25A <sup>1</sup>	Diesel fuel heater.
50	10A <sup>1</sup>	Power transfer unit fan.
51	—	Not used.
52	—	Not used.
53	10A <sup>1</sup>	Power seats.
54	5A <sup>2</sup>	Fuel operated heater.
55	5A <sup>2</sup>	Fuel operated heater.

<sup>1</sup>Micro fuse.

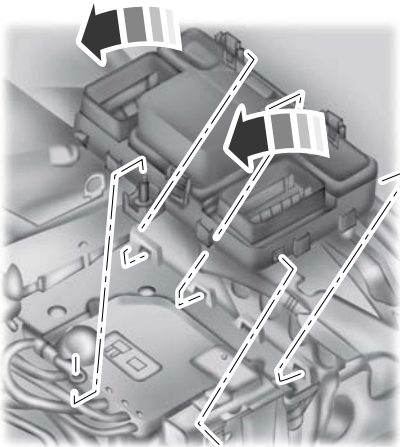
<sup>2</sup>Dual micro fuse.

<sup>3</sup>M-type fuse.

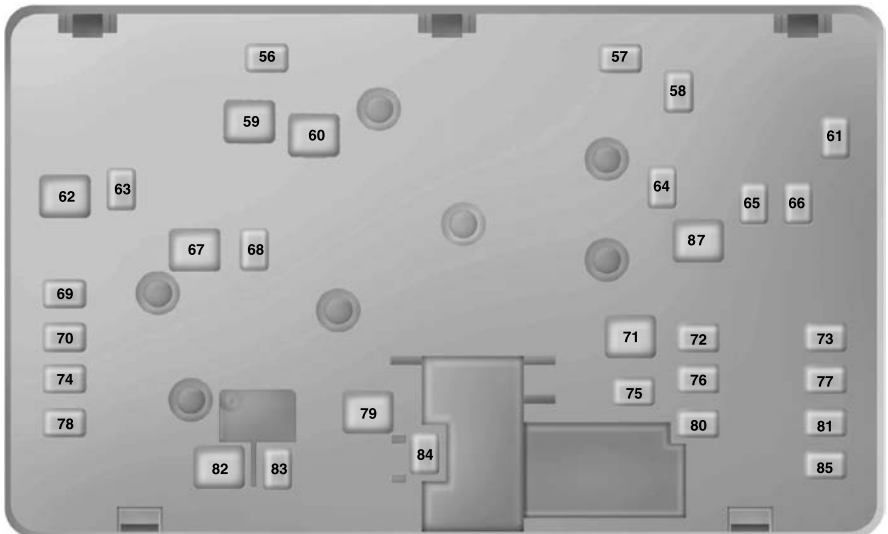
## Power Distribution Box - Bottom

There are fuses on the bottom of the fuse box. To access the bottom of the fuse box, do the following:

## Fuses



1. Release the two latches, on both sides of the fuse box.
2. Raise the inboard side of the fuse box from the cradle.
3. Move the fuse box toward the center of the engine compartment.
4. Pivot the outboard side of the fuse box to access the bottom side.



# Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
56	20A <sup>1</sup>	Headlamp washer.
57	20A <sup>1</sup>	Diesel vaporizer.
58	30A <sup>1</sup>	Fuel pump feed.
59	40A <sup>2</sup>	600W Electronic fan 3.
60	40A <sup>2</sup>	600W Electronic fan 1. Selective catalytic reductant system.
61	40A <sup>1</sup>	Left hand side windshield defrost.
62	50A <sup>2</sup>	Body control module 1.
63	25A <sup>1</sup>	600W Electronic fan 2.
64	30A <sup>1</sup>	Auxiliary heater #3.
65	20A <sup>1</sup>	Front heated seat.
66	40A <sup>1</sup>	Right hand side windshield defrost.
67	50A <sup>2</sup>	Body control module 2.
68	40A <sup>1</sup>	Heated rear window.
69	30A <sup>1</sup>	Anti-lock brake system valves.
70	30A <sup>1</sup>	Passenger seat.
71	60A <sup>2</sup>	Auxiliary heater #2.
72	30A <sup>1</sup>	Rear power seats.
73	20A <sup>1</sup>	Rear heated seats.
74	30A <sup>1</sup>	Driver seat module.
75	30A <sup>1</sup>	Auxiliary heater #1.
76	20A <sup>1</sup>	Transmission oil pump.

# Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
77	30A <sup>1</sup>	Climate control seat module.
78	40A <sup>1</sup>	Trailer tow module.
79	40A <sup>1</sup>	Blower motor.
80	40A <sup>1</sup>	Power liftgate module.
81	40A <sup>1</sup>	220 volt inverter.
82	60A <sup>2</sup>	Anti-lock brake system pump.
83	25A <sup>1</sup>	Wiper motor #1.
84	30A <sup>1</sup>	Starter solenoid.
85	20A <sup>1</sup>	Fuel fire heater.
86	—	Not used.
87	50A <sup>2</sup>	Auxiliary blower motor.

<sup>1</sup> M-type fuse.

<sup>2</sup> J-type fuse.

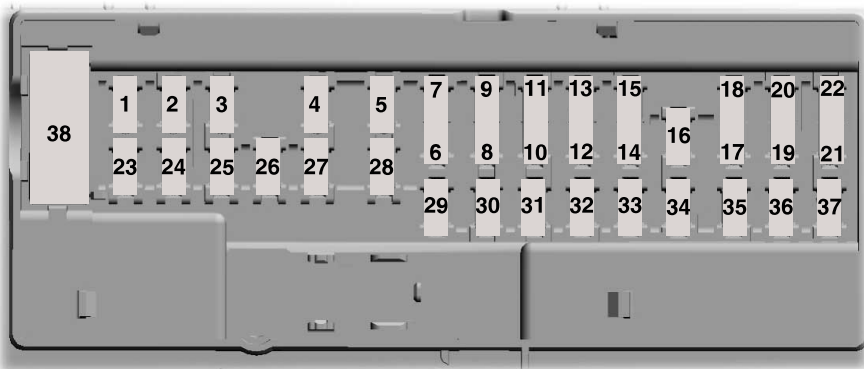
## Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is under the instrument panel to the left of the steering column.

**Note:** *It may be easier to access the fuse panel if you remove the finish trim piece.*



# Fuses



Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	10A <sup>1</sup>	Not used.
2	7.5A <sup>1</sup>	Memory seats, lumbar, power mirror.
3	20A <sup>1</sup>	Driver door unlock.
4	5A <sup>1</sup>	Aftermarket electronic trailer brake on/off switch.
5	20A <sup>1</sup>	Ignition switch. Push-button ignition switch.
6	10A <sup>2</sup>	Heated seat relay coil.
7	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
8	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
9	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
10	5A <sup>2</sup>	Keypad. Power liftgate module.
11	5A <sup>2</sup>	Not used.

## Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
12	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Climate control. Transmission selector.
13	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Steering wheel column lock. Cluster. Datalink logic.
14	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used.
15	10A <sup>2</sup>	Datalink gateway module.
16	15A <sup>1</sup>	Child lock. Liftgate release.
17	5A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
18	5A <sup>2</sup>	Ignition. Push button stop start switch.
19	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Passenger airbag disabled indicator. Transmission range indicator.
20	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
21	5A <sup>2</sup>	Humidity and in-car temperature sensor. Blind spot information system. Rear video camera. Adaptive cruise control.
22	5A <sup>2</sup>	Occupant classification sensor.
23	10A <sup>1</sup>	Delayed accessory (power inverter logic, moonroof logic).
24	20A <sup>1</sup>	Central locking system.
25	30A <sup>1</sup>	Driver door (window, mirror).
26	30A <sup>1</sup>	Front passenger door (window, mirror).
27	30A <sup>1</sup>	Moonroof.
28	20A <sup>1</sup>	Amplifier.
29	30A <sup>1</sup>	Rear driver side door (window).

# Fuses

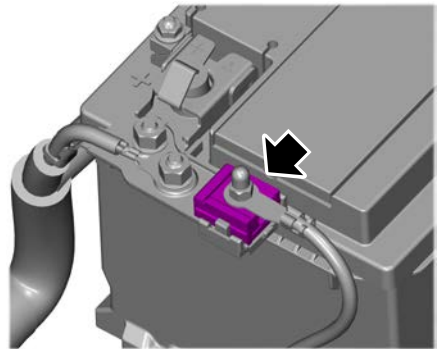
Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
30	30A <sup>1</sup>	Rear passenger side door (window).
31	15A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
32	10A <sup>1</sup>	Global positioning system. Display. Voice control. Adaptive cruise control. Radio.
33	20A <sup>1</sup>	Radio.
34	30A <sup>1</sup>	Run-start bus (fuse 19, 20, 21, 22, 35, 36, 37, circuit breaker).
35	5A <sup>1</sup>	Restraints control module.
36	15A <sup>1</sup>	Auto-dimming rear view mirror. Heated seat. All-wheel drive.
37	20A <sup>1</sup>	Voltage stability module logic power.
38	30A	Not used (spare).

<sup>1</sup>Micro fuse.

<sup>2</sup>Dual micro fuse.

## Fuse on Battery

The fuse is on the positive (+) terminal connector to the battery.



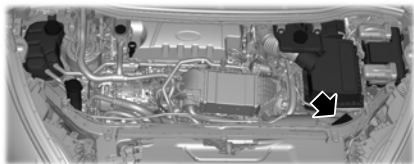
E276946

# Fuses

Fuse Rating	Protected Component
40 A	Selective catalytic reductant system - 2.0L EcoBlue (88kW/120PS) (YN)/2.0L EcoBlue (110kW/150PS) (YM)/2.0L EcoBlue (147kW/190PS) (BC).
60 A	Cooling fan - 2.0L EcoBlue (177kW/240PS) (YL).

## Reductant Dosage Control Module Fuse Box

Protected Component
Reductant dosage control module.

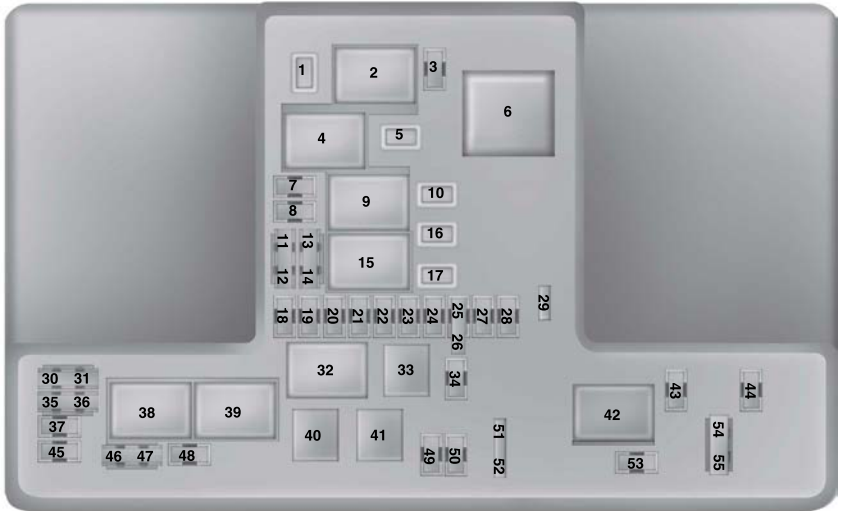


E276892

# Fuses

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### Power Distribution Box



E144783

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	25 A	RH front wiper motor.
2	—	Not used.
3	15 A	Autowipers (rain sensor). Rear wiper.
4	—	Blower motor relay.
5	20 A	Back of console auxiliary power point.
6	—	Pump-WTR Elec (EWP) Relay.
7	15 A	Vehicle Power 1.

## Fuses

<b>Fuse Location</b>	<b>Fuse Rating</b>	<b>Protected Component</b>
8	20 A	Vehicle Power 4.
9	—	Powertrain control module relay.
10	20 A	Driver front auxiliary power point 1.
11	15 A	Vehicle Power 2.
12	15 A	Vehicle Power 3.
13	10 A	Vehicle Power 5.
14	10 A	Vehicle Power 6.
15	—	Run-start relay.
16	20 A	Not used (spare).
17	20 A	Power point 4.
18	10 A	Powertrain control module.
19	10 A	Power steering.
20	10 A	Headlamps. Headlamp switch.
21	15 A	Control Module Transmission. Transmission Interface.
22	—	Not used.
23	15 A	Blind spot monitor. Rear view camera. Adaptive Cruise Control. Pre-collision warning indicator. Voltage quality module. Air quality sensor. Heads up display.
24	—	Not used.
25	10 A	Run/Start Anti-Lock Brake System.
26	10 A	Run/Start Powertrain Control Module. Hybrid Powertrain Control Module. Hybrid Power Distribution Box.
27	—	Not used.
28	10 A	Rear wash.

## Fuses

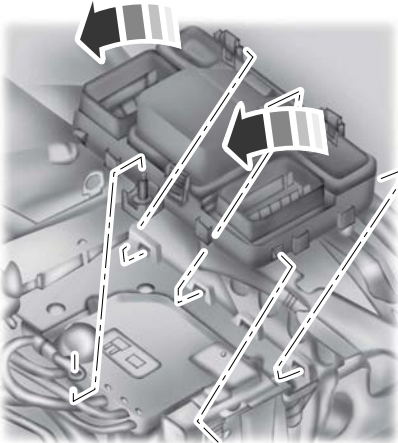
Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
29	—	Not used.
30	—	Not used.
31	—	Not used.
32	—	Not used.
33	—	Not used.
34	15 A	Electric steering column lock.
35	15 A	Not used (spare).
36	15 A	Not used (spare).
37	5 A	Not used (spare).
38	—	Not used.
39	—	Not used.
40	—	Headlamp washer relay.
41	—	Horn relay.
42	—	Fuel pump relay.
43	—	Not used.
44	5 A	Heated washer nozzle.
45	—	Not used.
46	10 A	Not used (spare).
47	10 A	Brake on-off switch.
48	20 A	Horn.
49	15 A	Vehicle Power F.
50	—	Not used.
51	—	Not used.
52	—	Not used.
53	10 A	Power seats.
54	5 A	Hybrid powertrain control module.
55	5 A	Battery energy control module.

# Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		DC DC Converter.

## Power Distribution Box - Bottom

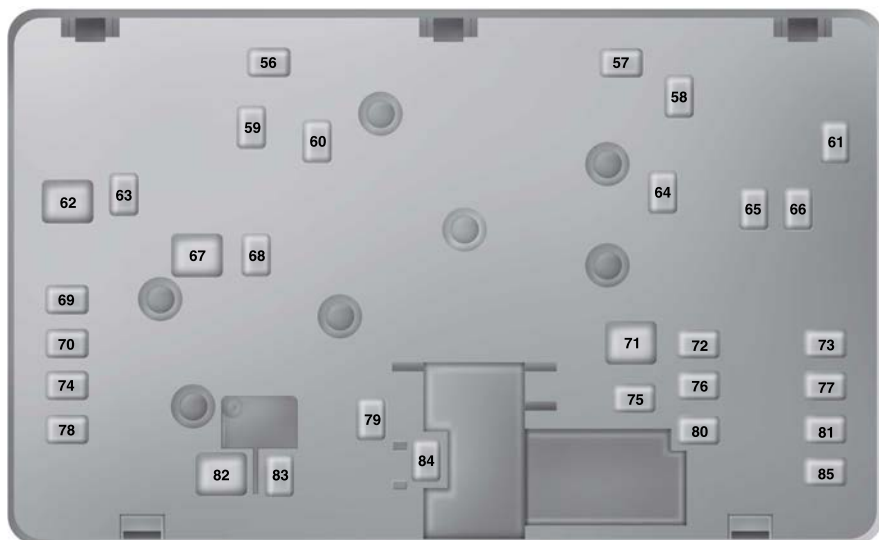
There are fuses on the bottom of the fuse box. To reach the bottom of the fuse box:



1. Release the two latches, located on both sides of the fuse box.
2. Raise the inboard side of the fuse box from the cradle.
3. Move the fuse box toward the center of the engine compartment.
4. Pivot the outboard side of the fuse box to reach the bottom side.



# Fuses



E144949

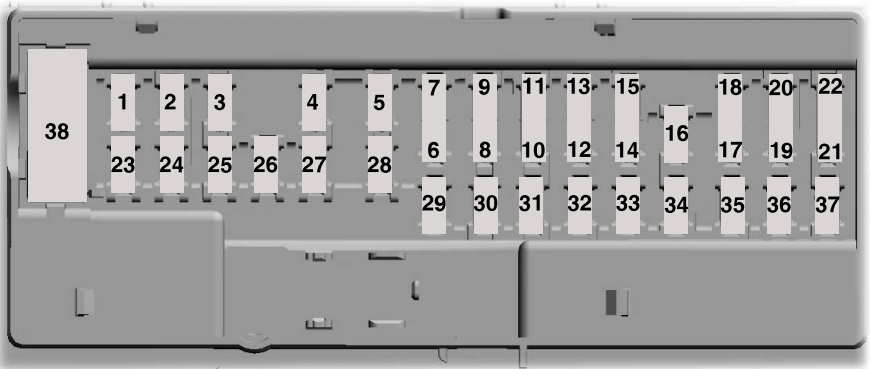
Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
56	20 A	Headlamp wash.
58	20 A	Fuel pump.
61	40 A	Left-hand heated windshield element.
62	50 A	Body control module.
63	—	Not used.
65	20 A	Front heated seat.
66	40 A	Right-hand heated windshield element.
67	50 A	Body control module.
68	40 A	Heated rear window.
69	40 A	ABS valves.
70	30 A	Passenger seat.

# Fuses

<b>Fuse Location</b>	<b>Fuse Rating</b>	<b>Protected Component</b>
71	60 A	Electric water pump.
72	30 A	Rear power seats.
73	20 A	Rear heated seat.
74	30 A	Driver seat module.
75	—	Not used.
76	40 A	Hybrid Power Distribution Box
77	30 A	Climate control seat module.
78	40 A	Trailer Tow Module.
79	40 A	Blower motor.
80	30 A	Power liftgate motor.
81	40 A	Inverter.
82	60 A	ABS pump.
83	25 A	Right-hand front wiper motor.
84	—	Not used.
85	20 A	Not used (spare).

# Fuses

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel



Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	7.5 A	Memory seat. Driver seat lower back support. Panoramic power sunshade (5-door only).
3	20 A	Driver door unlock. Fuel flap unlock.
4	5 A	Not used (spare).
5	20 A	Not used (spare).
6	10 A	Not used (spare).
7	10 A	Not used (spare).
8	10 A	Anti-theft alarm horn.
9	10 A	Not used (spare).
10	5 A	Power decklid module.
11	5 A	Combined security module.

## Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
12	7.5 A	Front climate control integration module (climate and radio control).
13	7.5 A	Steering wheel column. Instrument cluster. Data link connector.
14	10 A	HEV-Battery electronic control module. Direct current converter.
15	10 A	Data link gateway.
16	15 A	Child lock. Decklid release.
17	5 A	Battery backed-up sounder.
18	5 A	Ignition switch. Push button ignition switch.
19	7.5 A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
20	7.5 A	Headlamp control module.
21	5 A	Passenger compartment thermometer. Humidity sensor.
22	5 A	Pedestrian sounder.
23	10 A	Delayed accessory power.
24	20 A	Lock-unlock.
25	30 A	Driver door window. Driver door mirror.
26	30 A	Front passenger door window. Front passenger door mirror.
27	30 A	Moonroof.
28	20 A	Audio amplifier.
29	30 A	Rear driver side door window.
30	30 A	Rear passenger side door window.
31	15 A	Not used (spare).
32	10 A	Global positioning system module. Voice control (SYNC).

# Fuses

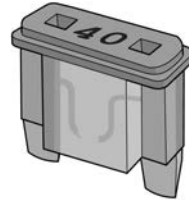
Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Information and entertainment display. Radio frequency receiver.
33	20 A	Radio. Active noise control.
34	30 A	Run/start bus (fuse #19, 20, 21, 22, 35, 36, 37, circuit breaker).
35	5 A	Restraints control module.
36	15 A	Auto-dimming interior mirror. Rear heated seat module. Computer Controlled Dwell module. Lane keeping system module. Auto high beam.
37	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
38	30 A	Not used (spare).

## CHANGING A FUSE

### Fuses



**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

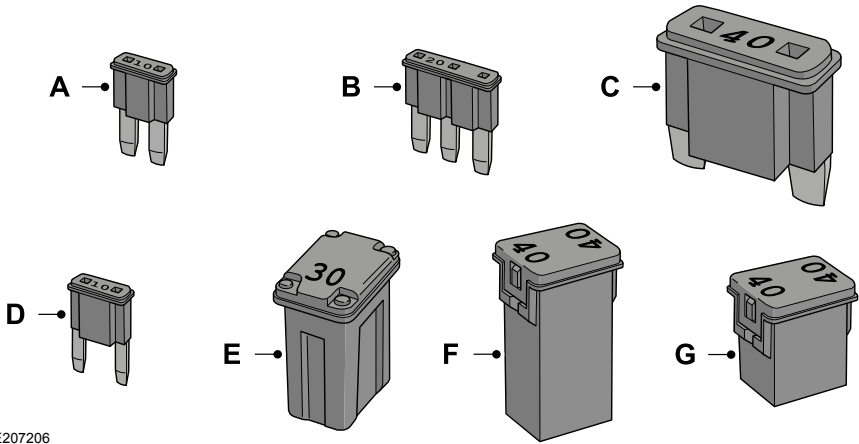


E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

# Fuses

## Fuse Types



E207206

Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.


## Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

## Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift the transmission to park (P).
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Block the wheels.

## Working with the Engine On

 **WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift the transmission to park (P).
2. Block the wheels.

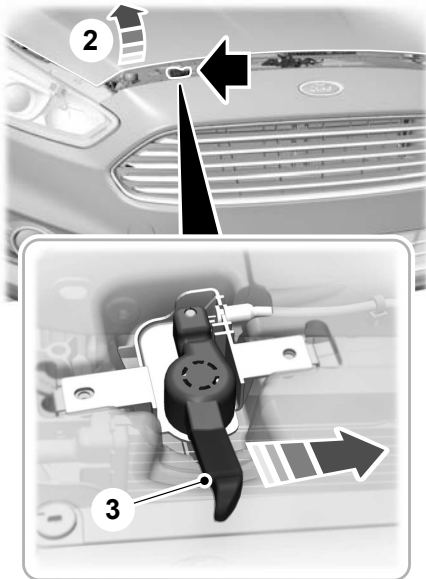
## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Hood



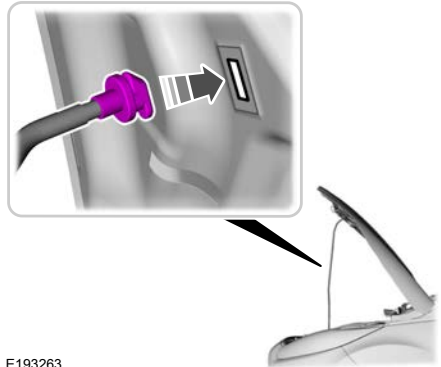
1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

# Maintenance



E218839

2. Slightly lift the hood.
3. Release the hood latch by pushing the secondary release lever to your right-hand side.



E193263

4. Open the hood. Support the hood with the strut.

## Closing the Hood

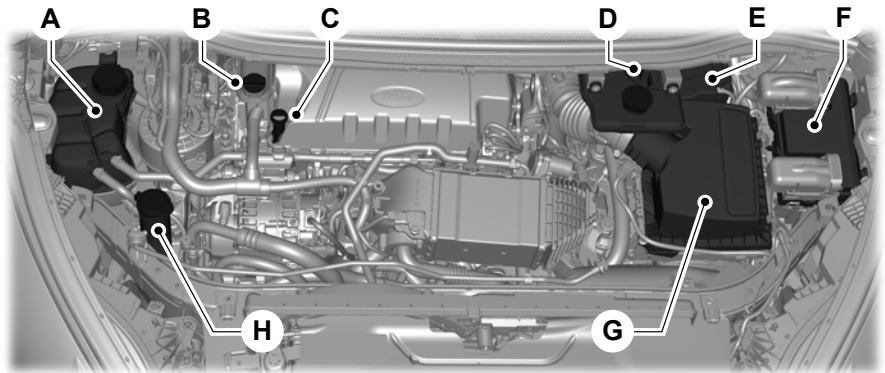
1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly after use.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm (8–12 in).

**Note:** Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.



# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBLUE, LHD

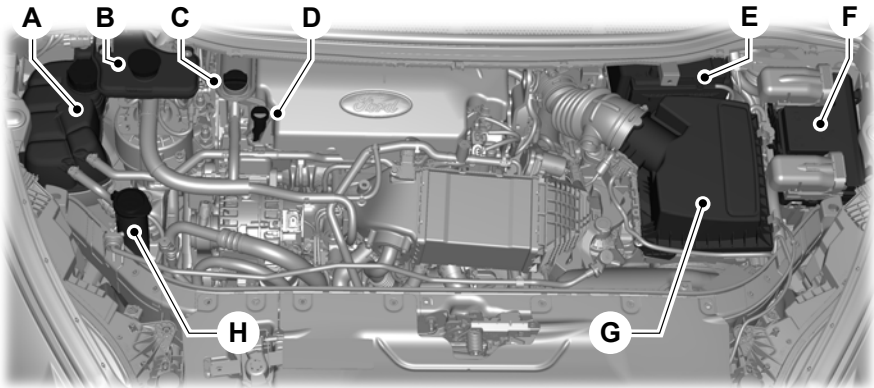


E269968

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 330).
- B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 329).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 329).
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 332).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 333).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 302).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 336).

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBLUE, RHD

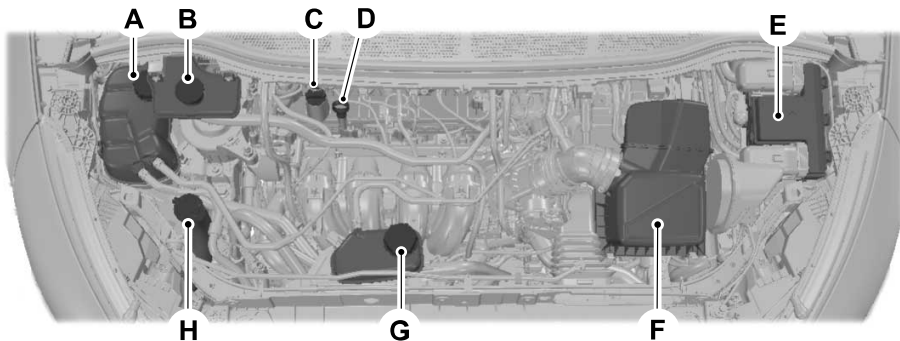


E269969

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 330).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 332).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 329).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 329).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 333).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 302).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 336).

# Maintenance

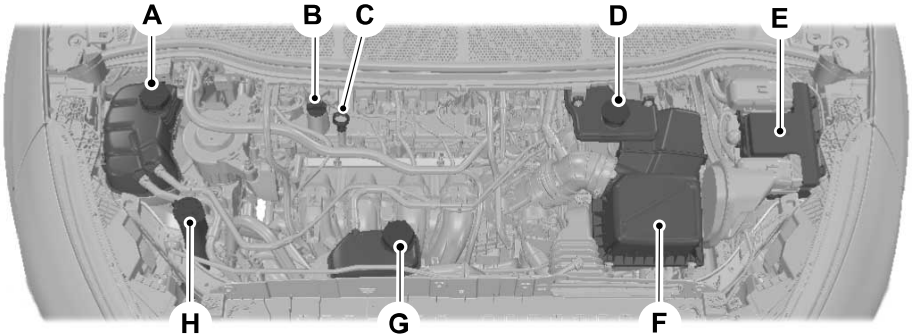
## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.5L DURATEC, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV), LHD



- A High temperature coolant cap. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 331).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 332).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 329).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 329).
- E Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 302).
- F Air filter assembly.
- G Low temperature coolant cap. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 331).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 336).

# Maintenance

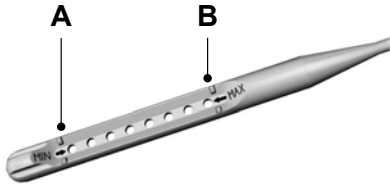
## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.5L DURATEC, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV), RHD



- A High temperature coolant cap. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 331).
- B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 329).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 329).
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 332).
- E Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 302).
- F Air filter assembly.
- G Low temperature coolant cap. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 331).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 336).

# Maintenance

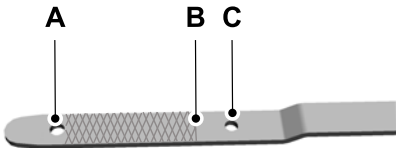
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L ECOBLUE



E226469

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.5L DURATEC, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)





- A Minimum.
- B Nominal.
- C Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
  2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
  3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
  4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
  5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.
- Note:** If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.
6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
  7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.
- Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).

## Adding Engine Oil

 **WARNING:** Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 369).

# Maintenance

4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

## ENGINE COOLING FAN - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

 **WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.


Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.


## ENGINE COOLING FAN - DIESEL


 **WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature. See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 202).

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

 **WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

 **WARNING:** Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.



E169064

Make sure that the coolant level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the coolant reservoir. If the level is at the MIN mark, below the MIN mark, or empty, add coolant immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 369).

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

# Maintenance

## Adding Coolant

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add engine coolant to the MAX mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.

**Note:** Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 369).

**Note:** In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

**Note:** Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of engine coolant can cause engine damage, such as corrosion, overheating or freezing. When you reach a service location, you must have a qualified personnel:

1. Drain the cooling system.
2. Chemically clean the coolant system.
3. Refill with engine coolant as soon as possible.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

**WARNING:** Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

Your vehicle is equipped with two separate cooling systems. One is for cooling the engine and one is for cooling the inverter system controller that is specific to the hybrid operating system. The two systems operate similarly, with the inverter system controller cooling system generally operating at a lower temperature and pressure.



E169064

Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks. If the coolant level is on or below the **MIN** mark, add coolant that meets the correct specification immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 369).

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

## Adding Engine Coolant

1. Remove the filler cap.

# Maintenance

2. Add engine coolant to the **MAX** mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.

**Note:** Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water, or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 369).

**Note:** In an emergency you can add just water to the cooling system to reach a vehicle service station.

**Note:** Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of engine coolant can cause engine damage, for example corrosion, overheating or freezing.

## Adding Inverter System Controller Coolant

1. Open the inverter system controller coolant reservoir cap.
2. Use a funnel to add prediluted coolant to the inverter system controller coolant reservoir. Make sure that the level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the inverter system controller coolant reservoir. Use prediluted coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 369).
3. Close the inverter system controller coolant reservoir cap.

Whenever you add coolant, check the coolant level in the inverter system controller coolant reservoir the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted coolant to bring the inverter system controller coolant level to the proper level.

## BRAKE FLUID CHECK



**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.



# Maintenance




To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.


Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 369).


## CLUTCH FLUID CHECK


The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 332).


## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

 **WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

 **WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

 **WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

 **WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

 **WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

# Maintenance

---

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 325).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

**Note:** *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** *If you add electrical accessories or components to your vehicle this may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If you replace the battery make sure it matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

**Note:** *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

**Note:** *Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.*

# Maintenance

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Power Windows** (page 88).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

## Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**



**WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is in the luggage compartment.

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

# Maintenance

**Note:** If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** If you add electrical accessories or components to your vehicle this may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.

If you replace the battery make sure it matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

**Note:** The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

4. Remove the battery securing clamp.
5. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal.
6. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal.
7. Remove the battery.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.

**Note:** Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Power Windows** (page 88).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

## Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution follow the manufacturer's instructions.

# Maintenance

**Note:** The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

## CHANGING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

### Service Position

Set the windshield wipers in the service position to change the wiper blades.

**Note:** You can use the service position to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice.

**Note:** Make sure the windshield is free from snow and ice before you switch the ignition on.

1. Switch the ignition off.



2. Manually move the wiper arms to the service position.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade when moving the wiper arm to the service position.

The windshield wipers return to the starting position when you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** Do not rotate the wiper arms with ignition on.

## Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades

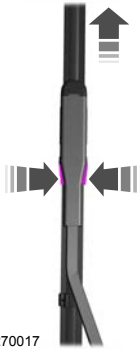
1. Manually move the wiper arms to the service position.
2. Lift the wiper arm.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

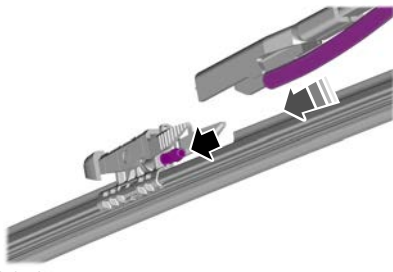
3. Remove the washer hose.

# Maintenance



4. Press the wiper blade locking clip.
5. Remove the wiper blade.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

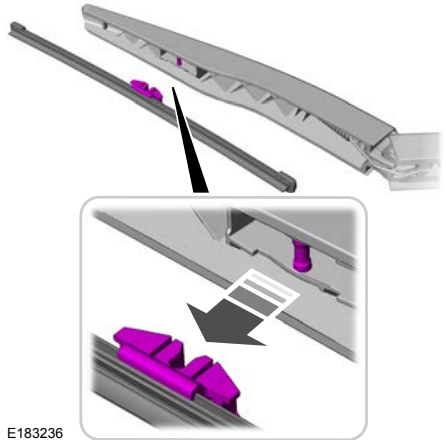


7. Make sure that the hose is firmly attached.

## CHANGING THE REAR WIPER BLADES

1. Lift the wiper arm.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



2. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

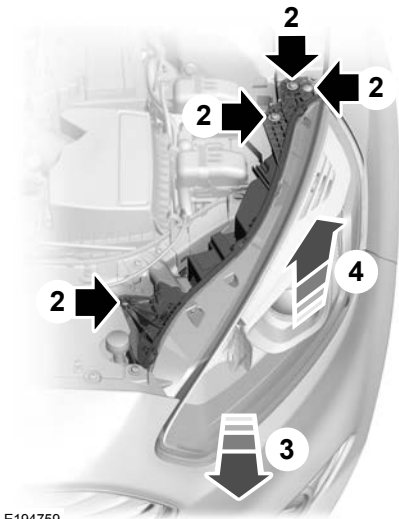
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## REMOVING A HEADLAMP

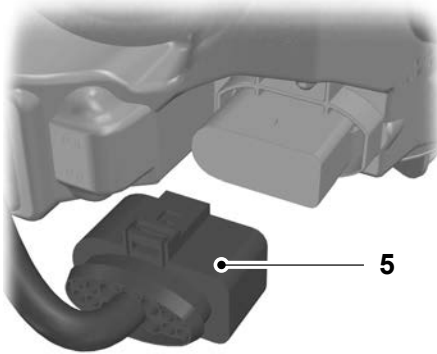
1. Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 323).

# Maintenance



E194759

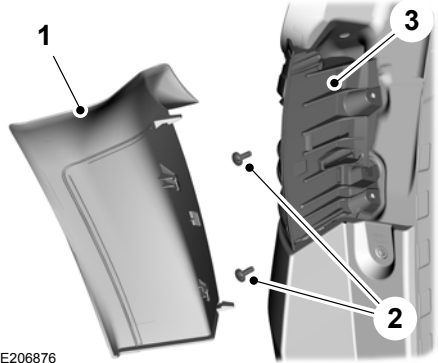
2. Remove the screws.
3. Pull the headlamp as far as possible towards the front of the vehicle to disengage it from the lower fixing point.
4. Lift the outer side of the headlamp and remove it.



5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

## REMOVING A REAR LAMP

### Rear Direction Indicator

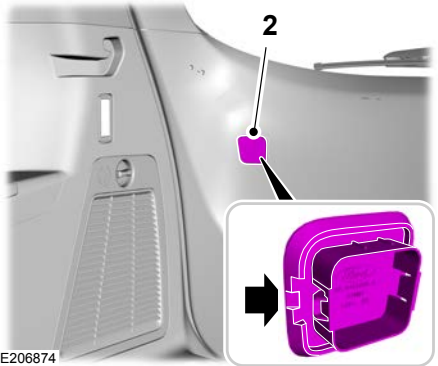


E206876

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the screws that secure the lamp assembly.
3. Remove the lamp.

### Reversing Lamp

1. Open the liftgate.

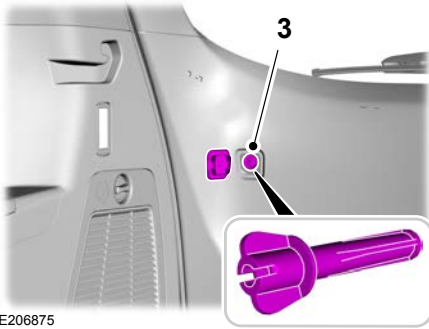


E206874

2. Carefully remove the cover.

# Maintenance

**Note:** Use a screwdriver to remove the cover.



3. Remove the wing nut.
4. Remove the lamp.

## CHANGING A BULB



**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to do so could result in serious personal injury.



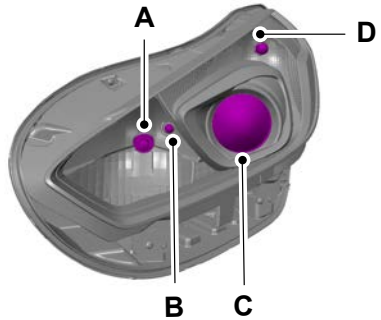
**WARNING:** Lamps and associated components become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 344).

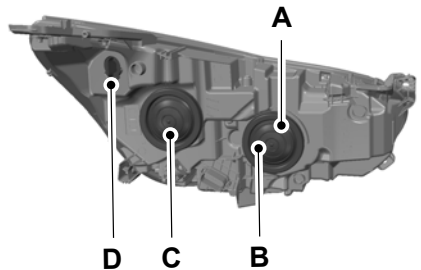
## Headlamp

You may have to remove the headlamp assembly prior to replacing a bulb. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 338).

## Halogen Headlamp



- A Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp.
- B Front position lamps.
- C Headlamp low beam.
- D Front direction indicator.



- A Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp.
- B Front position lamps.

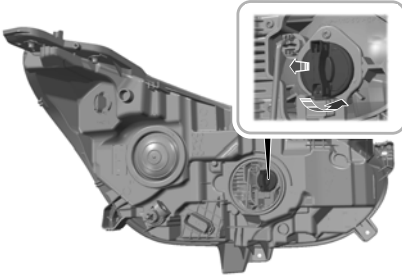


# Maintenance

- C Headlamp low beam.
- D Front direction indicator.

## Headlamp High Beam and Daytime Running Lamp

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.



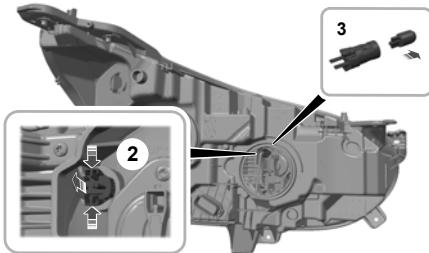
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

**Note:** You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

**Note:** Do not touch the bulb glass.

## Front Position Lamp

1. Carefully remove the cover.

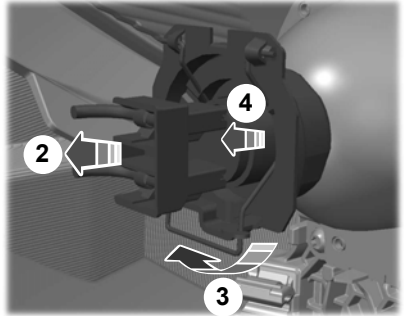


2. Depress the tabs on the socket and remove the socket and bulb together.

3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

## Headlamp Low Beam

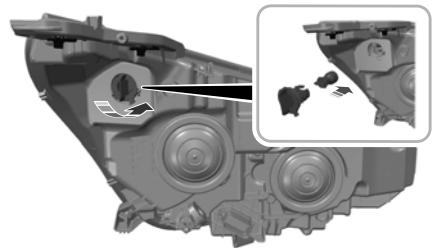
1. Carefully remove the cover.



2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Release the clip.
4. Remove the bulb.

**Note:** Do not touch the bulb glass.

## Front Direction Indicator



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

# Maintenance

## LED Headlamp



These lamps have LEDs.

**Note:** We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

## Front Fog Lamp

Access the underside of your vehicle in front of the front wheel.



E174588

1. Disconnect the electrical connector.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

**Note:** You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

**Note:** Do not touch the bulb glass.

**Note:** Front fog lamps are also available as LED lamps.

**Note:** We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

## Side Direction Indicator

These lamps have LEDs.

**Note:** We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

## Rear Lamp

Remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp** (page 339).

## Rear Lamp

These lamps have LEDs.

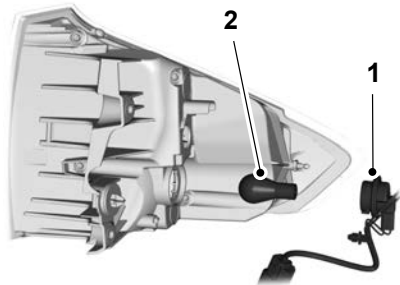
**Note:** We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

## Stoplamp

These lamps have LEDs.

**Note:** We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

## Rear Direction Indicator



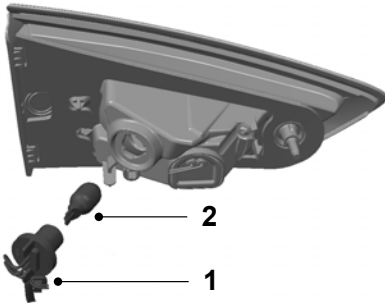
1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

# Maintenance

**Note:** Rear direction indicators are also available as LED lamps.

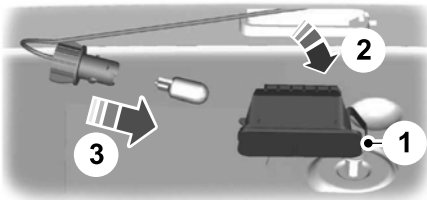
**Note:** We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

## Reversing Lamp



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

## License Plate Lamp



1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

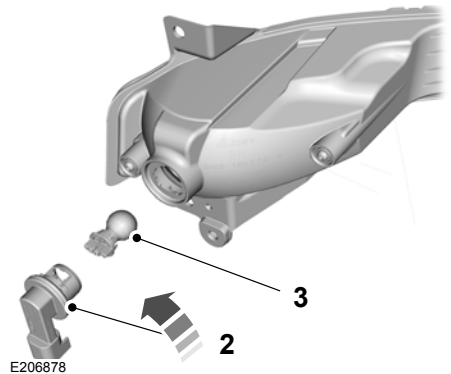
## High Mounted Stoplamp

These lamps have LEDs.

**Note:** We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

## Rear Fog Lamp

Access the underside of your vehicle behind the rear wheel.



1. Disconnect the electrical connector.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

# Maintenance

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

### Exterior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front position lamp. <sup>1</sup>	W5W	5
Front position lamp. <sup>2</sup>	LED.	-
Front direction indicator. <sup>1</sup>	PY21W	21
Front direction indicator. <sup>2</sup>	LED.	-
Headlamp low beam. <sup>1</sup>	H7	55
Headlamp low beam. <sup>2</sup>	LED.	-
Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp. <sup>1</sup>	H15	55
Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp. <sup>2</sup>	LED.	-
Front fog lamp. <sup>3</sup>	H11	55
Side direction indicator.	LED.	-
Rear lamp.	LED.	-
Stoplamp.	LED.	-
High mounted stoplamp.	LED.	-
Rear direction indicator. <sup>4</sup>	PY21W	21
Rear fog lamp.	P21W	21
Reversing lamps.	W16W	16
License plate lamp.	W5W	5

<sup>1</sup> Halogen Headlamp. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 340).

<sup>2</sup> LED Headlamp. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 340).

<sup>3</sup> Front fog lamps are also available as LED lamps.

<sup>4</sup> Rear direction indicators are also available as LED lamps.

**Note:** We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

# Maintenance

---

## Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Glove compartment lamp.	LED.	-
Interior lamp.	LED.	-
Map reading lamp.	LED.	-
Vanity mirror lamp.	LED.	-
Luggage compartment lamp.	LED.	-

**Note:** We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

# Vehicle Care

---

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

### Cleaning the Exterior Precautions

Immediately remove fuel spillages, AdBlue residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennae, before entering a car wash.

### Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

### Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

**Note:** When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

### Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

**Note:** For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Rinse the area well after cleaning.

**Note:** Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.

**Note:** Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.

### Cleaning Wheels

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

**Note:** Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

**Note:** Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.

**Note:** Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.

# Vehicle Care

## Cleaning the Engine Compartment

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below windshield.

**Note:** *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

## Cleaning Stripes or Graphics

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 305 mm (12 in) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 14,000 kPa (2,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 82°C (179°F).

**Note:** *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

## Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

**Note:** *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

## Cleaning the Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### Cleaning the Instrument Panel



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

# Vehicle Care

**Note:** Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

## Cleaning Plastic

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## Cleaning Displays and Screens

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

**Note:** Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

**Note:** Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

## Cleaning Leather and Vinyl

We recommend that you only clean the leather and vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.

4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

## Cleaning Fabric Seats and Headliners



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the fabric seats and headliners in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

## Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.



# Vehicle Care

2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

## Cleaning Seatbelts



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## Cleaning Storage Compartments

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## Cleaning Moonroof Tracks

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

## WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

**Note:** Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.

# Wheels and Tires

## GENERAL INFORMATION

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold. See **Tire Pressures** (page 357).

**Note:** Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

Only use approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and could make the National Type Approval invalid.

Installation of any tires that are not the original equipment tire size can cause the speedometer to display incorrect vehicle speed.

## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT



**WARNING:** Do not use the inflator kit on run flat tires. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

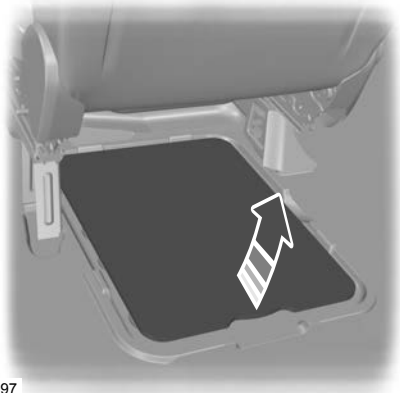


**WARNING:** Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

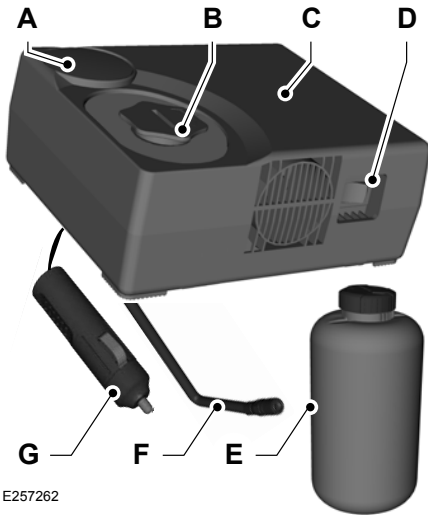
If your vehicle does not have a spare wheel it has a tire sealant and inflator kit. The kit is in the passenger compartment floor, behind the front right-hand seat. Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.



E78097

**Note:** The kit can only temporarily repair one tire puncture with a maximum puncture size of up to 6 mm (0.24 in).

# Wheels and Tires



E257262

- A Pressure Gauge.
- B Sealant bottle access cap.
- C Warning label.
- D Power switch.
- E Sealant bottle.
- F Tire inflation pipe.
- G 12 volt DC power point connector.

**Note:** Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.



If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates do the following:

1. Gradually reduce the vehicle speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.

3. Check for a punctured tire.

**Note:** Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.

## Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

**WARNING:** Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

**WARNING:** Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

**WARNING:** Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

**WARNING:** Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.

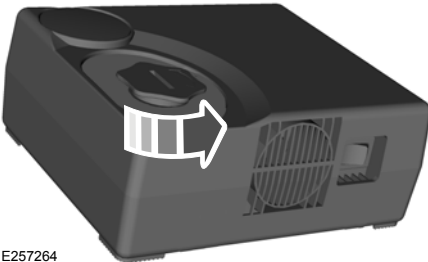
To temporarily repair a punctured tire, do the following:

# Wheels and Tires



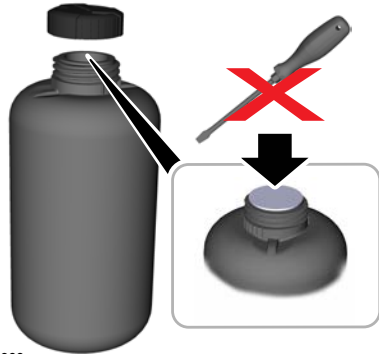
E257263

1. Release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



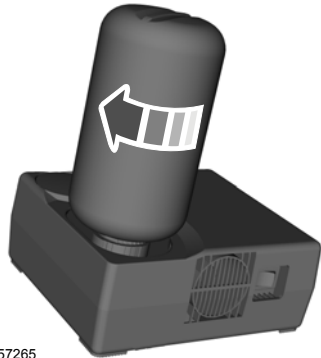
E257264

2. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.



E256963

3. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.

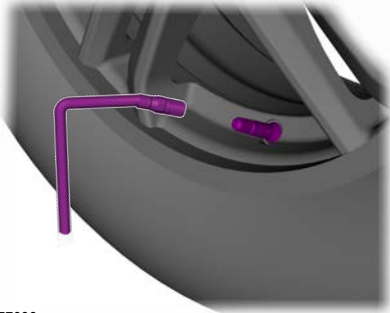


E257265

4. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** *Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.*

# Wheels and Tires



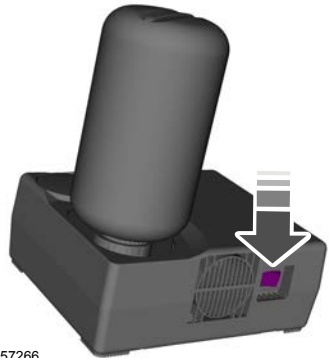
E257006

5. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.



E257022

6. Plug the 12 volt DC power point connector into the 12 volt DC socket. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 160).
7. Start the engine.



E257266

8. Switch the compressor on.



E257121

9. Inflate the tire to between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi).

**Note:** If the tire pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

10. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure of between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi), switch the compressor and the ignition off.

# Wheels and Tires

11. Disconnect the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector.

**Note:** Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.

12. Reinstall the tire valve dust cap.
13. Place the warning label on the steering wheel and correctly stow the kit.



E257942

14. Immediately drive your vehicle for 3–10 km (2–6 mi). Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).



E257121

15. After driving between 3–10 km (2–6 mi), stop your vehicle and recheck the tire pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 357).

**Note:** If the tire pressure has dropped to 1.8 bar (26 psi) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

**Note:** If the tire pressure has dropped but is still above 1.8 bar (26 psi), use the kit to inflate the tire again.

## After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



**WARNING:** If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 1.3 bar (18.9 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (124 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.

# Wheels and Tires

- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

## TIRE CARE

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance, or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly. A dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly is defined as a spare tire or wheel that is different in brand, size, or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

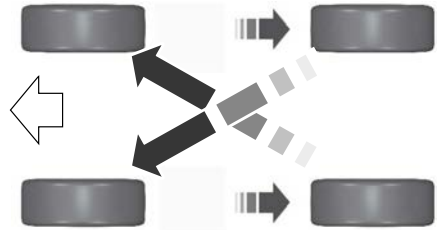
**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

Rotating your tires at regular intervals of between 3000 and 6000 miles (5000 and 10000 kilometers) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tread life. Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

## Tire Rotation

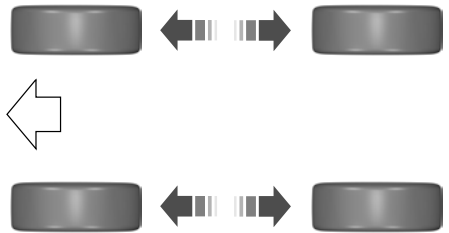
Front-wheel drive and All-wheel drive vehicles (front tires at left of diagram).

## Non-directional tires



E142547

## Directional tires



E70415

## USING SUMMER TIRES

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to about 7°C (45°F) or below (depending on tire wear and environmental conditions) or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

# Wheels and Tires

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above  $-7^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $19^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below  $-7^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $19^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). If the tires have been subjected to  $-7^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $19^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) or less, warm them in a heated space to at least  $5^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $41^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking tire inflation. Do not place tires near heaters or heating devices used to warm the room where the tires are stored. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

## USING WINTER TIRES



E278852

We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is  $7^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $45^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressures** (page 357).



**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door latch post or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat), or Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

## USING SNOW CHAINS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 50 km/h (31 mph).



**WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

**Note:** *The anti-lock braking system will continue to operate normally.*



# Wheels and Tires

Only certain chains or snow cables have been approved as safe for use on your vehicle with the following wheel and tire combination(s): 17" wheels with 235/55R17 tires. You should only install chains or cables sized at 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire.

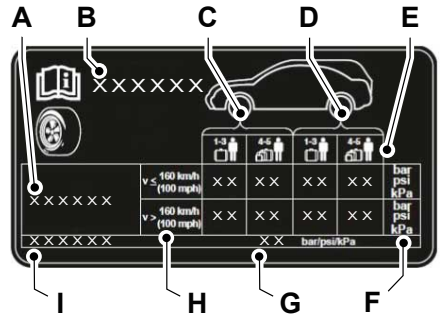
Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

## TIRE PRESSURES

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

**Note:** You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

## Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
235/55R17 103V.	2.6 (38)	2.4 (35)	2.7 (39)	3.1 (45)
235/55R17 103V All Season/Winter.	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.7 (39)	3.1 (45)
235/50R18 101V.	2.4 (35)	2.2 (32)	2.8 (41)	3.2 (46)

## Wheels and Tires

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
235/50R18 101W.	2.4 (35)	2.2 (32)	2.8 (41)	3.2 (46)
235/50R18 101Y.	2.6 (38)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)	3.2 (46)
245/45R19 102V.	2.6 (38)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)	3.2 (46)

### Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h (100 mph) or under trailer tow conditions up to 100 km/h (62 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
235/55R17 103V.	2.6 (38)	2.4 (35)	2.7 (39)	3.1 (45)
235/55R17 103V All Season/Winter.	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.7 (39)	3.1 (45)
235/50R18 101V.	2.6 (38)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)	3.2 (46)
235/50R18 101W.	2.4 (35)	2.2 (32)	2.8 (41)	3.2 (46)
235/50R18 101Y.	2.6 (38)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)	3.2 (46)
245/45R19 102V.	2.6 (38)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)	3.2 (46)

# Wheels and Tires

## LUG NUTS

### Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications



**WARNING:** When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Bolt size	lb-ft (Nm)*
M14 x 1.5	220 Nm (162 lb.ft)

\*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance, for example tire rotation, changing a flat tire or wheel removal.



A Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

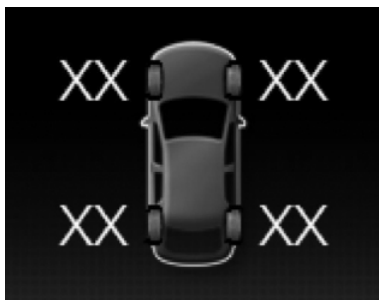
The warning lamp can illuminate when:

- You use a spare wheel or a tire sealant and inflator kit.
- The outside air temperature drops significantly. The tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp. Check each tire to verify that none are flat. Inflate the tires, if needed, to the recommended pressures and carry out the reset procedure.

**Note:** Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

**Note:** After you inflate the tires to the correct pressure, it may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning lamp to turn off.

## VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist**.
2. Select **Tyre monitor**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

**Note:** *If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.*

**Note:** *The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.*

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist**.

2. Select **Tyre monitor**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps



The low tire pressure warning lamp combines functions.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly underinflated	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. See <b>Tire Pressures</b> (page 357). Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

---

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Tyre pressure low	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	The temporary spare wheel is either in use or the system has detected a fault in the sensor that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - GALAXY

<b>Dimension Description</b>	<b>mm (in)</b>
Overall length.	4,853 (191.1)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,137 (84.1)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	1,770–1,811 (69.7–71.3)
Wheelbase.	2,850 (112.2)
Front track.	1,606 (63.2)
Rear track.	1,606 (63.2)

# Capacities and Specifications

---

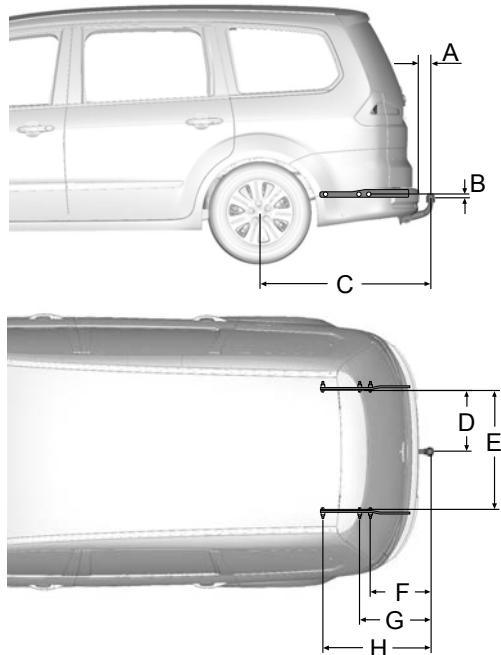
## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - S-MAX

<b>Dimension description.</b>	<b>mm (in)</b>
Overall length.	4,803 mm (189.1 in)
Overall length. Vehicles with body styling kit.	4,830 mm (190.2 in)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,137 mm (84.1 in)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	1,684–1,710 mm (66.3–67.3 in)
Wheelbase.	2,850 mm (112.2 in)
Front track.	1,606 mm (63.2 in)
Rear track.	1,606 mm (63.2 in)



# Capacities and Specifications

## TOWBAR DIMENSIONS - GALAXY



E75181

Item	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	79 mm (3.1 in)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	28.6 mm (1.1 in)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	1,135 mm (44.7 in)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	422 mm (16.6 in)
E	Distance between side members.	844 mm (33.2 in)

# Capacities and Specifications

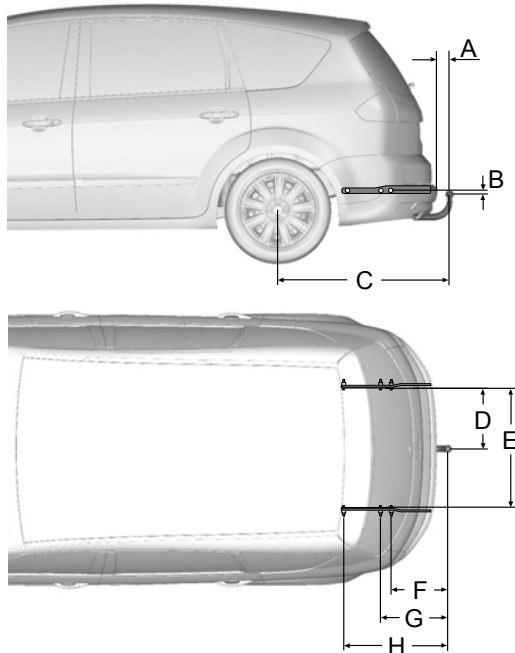
<b>Item</b>	<b>Dimension Description</b>	<b>mm (in)</b>
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	420 mm (16.5 in)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	480 mm (18.9 in)
H	Center of tow ball to center of third attachment point.	733 mm (28.9 in)

## Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

<b>kg (lb)</b>
90 (198)

# Capacities and Specifications

## TOWBAR DIMENSIONS - S-MAX



E75182

Item	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	80 mm (3.1 in)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	28.6 mm (1.1 in)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	1,088 mm (42.8 in)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	423 mm (16.7 in)
E	Distance between side members.	846 mm (33.3 in)

# Capacities and Specifications

Item	Dimension Description	mm (in)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	372 mm (14.6 in)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	432 mm (17.0 in)
H	Center of tow ball to center of third attachment point.	685 mm (27.0 in)

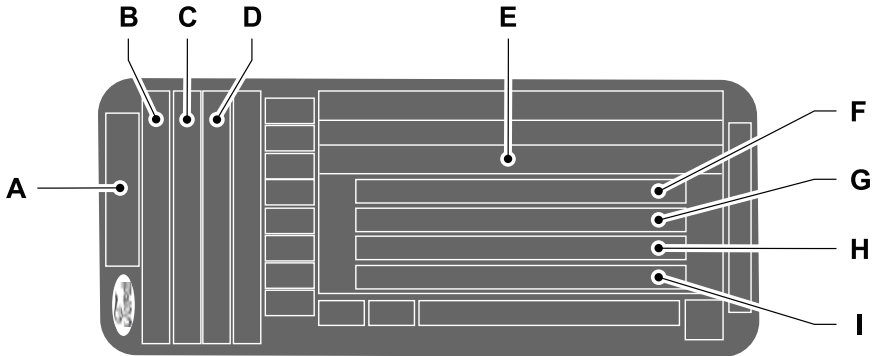
## Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

kg (lb)
90 (198)

**Note:** The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

**Note:** Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.



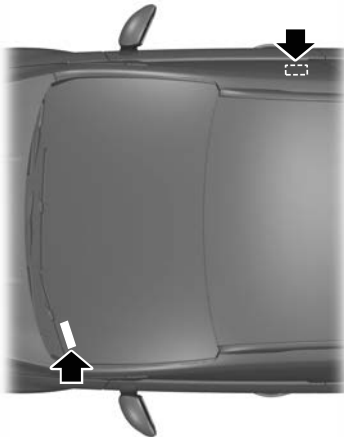
- A Model
- B Variant
- C Engine designation
- D Engine power and emission level

# Capacities and Specifications

- E Vehicle identification number
- F Gross vehicle weight
- G Gross train weight
- H Maximum front axle weight
- I Maximum rear axle weight

Your vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate, located at the bottom of the lock side of the right-hand door aperture.

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



E87496

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L ECOBLUE

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

# Capacities and Specifications

## Engine

### Engine Oil

#### Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter	Excluding the Oil Filter
All.	6.4 L (1.4 gal)	6.2 L (1.4 gal)

**Note:** The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 2 L (0.4 gal).

#### Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C950-A

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C950-A, it is acceptable to use a SAE 0W-30 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C2.

**Note:** Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

## Engine Coolant

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Vehicles without a fuel fired heater or an auxiliary heater.	10.7 L (2.4 gal)
Vehicles with a fuel fired heater.	11.4 L (2.5 gal)
Vehicles with an auxiliary heater.	12 L (12.68 qt)
Vehicles with a fuel fired heater and an auxiliary heater.	12.7 L (13.42 qt)

#### Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## Fuel Tank

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Front wheel drive.	63 L (13.9 gal)
All-wheel drive.	61 L (13.4 gal)

## Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue) Tank

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	12.4 L (2.7 gal)

## Washer Reservoir

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Washer system fill capacity.	4.5 L (1.0 gal)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

## Brake System

### Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

# Capacities and Specifications

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

### Engine

#### Engine Oil

##### Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.4 L (5.7 qt)

### Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B

#### Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, you can top-up with a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

**Note:** Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.1 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

#### Engine Coolant

##### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
High temperature circuit.	7.6 L (1.7 gal)
Low temperature circuit.	4.5 L (1.0 gal)



# Capacities and Specifications

---

## Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze / Coolant POAT	WSS-M97B57-A1
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle.

## Fuel Tank

### Capacities

Variante	Quantity
All.	65 L (14.3 gal)

## Washer Reservoir

### Capacities

Variante	Quantity
All.	4.5 L (1.0 gal)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

## Brake System

### Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

# Capacities and Specifications

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

### Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

The declared fuel/energy consumptions, CO<sub>2</sub>-Emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. Light Duty Vehicle type-approved using the World Harmonised Light Vehicle Test Procedure (WLTP) will have Fuel/Energy Consumption and CO<sub>2</sub>-Emission information for New European Drive Cycle (NEDC) and WLTP. WLTP will fully replace the NEDC latest by the end of the year 2020. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

During NEDC phase-out, WLTP fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions are being correlated back to NEDC. There will be some variance to the previous fuel economy and emissions as some elements of the tests have altered, so the same car might have different fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions. CO<sub>2</sub> is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 2.0L ECOBLUE

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
7.5–6 (38–47)	5.7–4.5 (50–63)	6.3–5 (45–56)	117-195

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### NEDC

<b>Combined</b>	<b>CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions</b>
<b>L/100 km (mpg)</b>	<b>g/km</b>
6.4–5.6 (44–50)	128–146

### WLTP

<b>Combined</b>	<b>CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions</b>
<b>L/100 km (mpg)</b>	<b>g/km</b>
6.7–6.4 (42–44)	146–153

# Connected Vehicle

## WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

### What is the Modem



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

## Enabling and Disabling the Modem

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **FordPass Connect**.
3. Press **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

## Connecting FordPass to the Modem

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option for vehicle details.
5. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
6. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
7. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **Wi-Fi**.
3. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View available networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

# Connected Vehicle

---

## CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: MODEM

<b>Symptom</b>	<b>Possible Cause and Resolution</b>
I cannot confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Modem is not enabled.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Switch connectivity features on.</li></ul></li><li>- Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li></ul>

## Connected Vehicle

### CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Password error.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter the correct network password.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Weak network signal.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Multiple access points in range with the same SSID.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Weak network signal.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Obstructed network signal.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Hidden network.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make the network visible and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## Connected Vehicle

<b>Symptom</b>	<b>Possible Cause and Resolution</b>
I cannot see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– System limitation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.</li> <li>• The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Software downloads take too long.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Weak network signal.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– No software update available.</li> <li>– Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

# Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

---

## CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.

**Note:** The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Edit**.
6. Select **Wi-Fi visibility**.

**Note:** The Wi-Fi Visibility default setting is on.

## Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.
4. Select **Settings**.

**Note:** The SSID is the hotspot name.

5. Select **View password**.

## Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, turn on Wi-Fi and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

## Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

**Note:** The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

**Note:** Secure websites do not redirect.

**Note:** If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

**Note:** If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

**Note:** If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

**Note:** The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

## CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.
4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Edit**.
6. Select **Change SSID name**.
7. Enter your required SSID.
8. Select **Done**.
9. Select **Change password**.
10. Enter your required password.
11. Select **Done**.



# Audio System

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

The frequencies your radio receives are:

- AM: 531-1620 kHz.
- FM: 87.5-108 MHz.

**Note:** *Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.*

Radio reception factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

### CD and CD Player Information

**Note:** *CD units play commercially pressed 12 cm (4.7 in) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

**Note:** *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

**Note:** *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

### MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

# Audio System

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

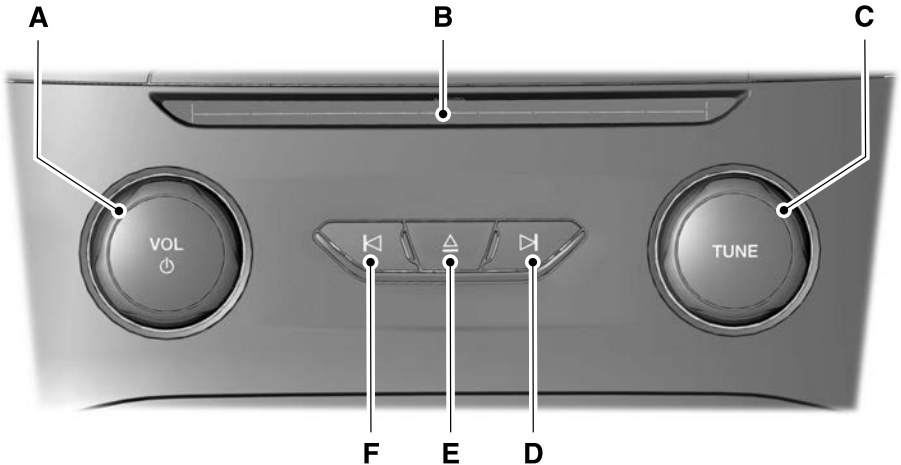
## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: PREMIUM AM/FM/CD



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.*

# Audio System



E188891

- A **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.
- B **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- C **TUNE:** Turn to search radio stations in individual increments.
- D **Seek:** In radio mode, select a radio station and press this button. The system stops at the next strongest station. Press and hold to move quickly to the next strong radio station. In CD mode, press to select the next track. Press and hold to move quickly forward through the current track.
- E **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.
- F **Seek:** In radio mode, select a radio station and press this button. The system stops at the previous strongest station. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the previous strong radio station. In CD mode, press to select the previous track. Press and hold to move quickly backward through the current track.

# Audio System

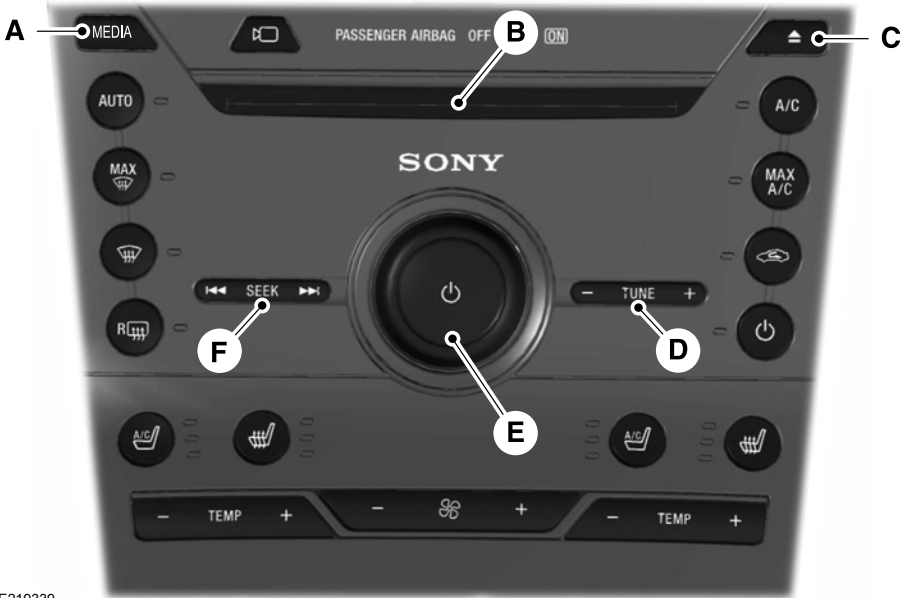
## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SONY AM/FM/CD



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We

recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** *The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See your SYNC information.*



E219339

- A **MEDIA:** Press to open the media source menu. You can press this multiple times to change to CD or to a SYNC-Media device or scroll through the media sources using the arrow buttons.
- B **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- C **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

# Audio System

- D **TUNE:** In radio mode, adjust to manually search through the radio frequency band.
- E **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.
- F **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In CD mode, press to select the next or previous track. Press and hold to move quickly forward or backward through the current track.

## Menu Structure

**Note:** Depending on your system, some options may appear slightly different.

Press **MENU**.

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the options.

Press the right arrow to enter a menu.  
Press the left arrow to exit a menu.

Press **OK** to confirm a selection.

<b>Radio</b>	
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
AST	Select to store the six strongest local stations on the AM-AST and FM-AST frequency bands.
Radio Text*	Select to display extra information such as artist name.

\*Extra information may not always be available.

<b>Audio Settings</b>	
Speed Compensated Volume	Automatically adjusts the volume to compensate for speed and wind noise. You can set the system between 0 and +7.
Sound	Select to adjust settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.
Occupancy Mode	Select to optimize sound quality for the chosen seating position.
DSP	Choose between the stereo modes. Only with the external sound systems.

# Audio System

## CD Settings

Scan All	Select to scan all disc selections.
Scan Folder	Select to scan all music in the current MP3 folder.

## Clock Settings

Set Time	Select to set the time.
Set Date	Select to set the calendar date.
24h Mode	Select to view clock time in a 12-hour mode or 24-hour mode.

## Display Settings

Dimming	Select to change display brightness.
Language	Select to display the language in English, French or Spanish.
Temp. setting	Select to display the outside temperature in Fahrenheit or Celsius.

## DIGITAL RADIO

### General Information

The system allows you to listen to DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast) radio stations.

**Note:** Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

The following formats are supported:

- DAB.
- DAB+.
- DMB-Audio (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

### Ensembles

Ensembles contain a group of radio stations. Each ensemble can consist of several different radio stations.

The radio station name displays below the ensemble name.

**Note:** When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronizes to the next ensemble. The system mutes during synchronization.

### Service Linking

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system will automatically switch to the corresponding FM radio station.

# Audio System

You can switch this feature on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 381).

**Note:** If a DAB radio station has no corresponding FM radio station, the audio will mute when attempting to switch.

**Note:** The system displays the FM symbol when DAB and FM radio stations link.

**Note:** The sound quality changes when your system switches from DAB to the corresponding FM station.

## Using Digital Audio Broadcast and SYNC

### Selecting Radio Band

1. Press the **SOURCE** button.
2. Select **DAB**.

**Note:** When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning skips to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio briefly mutes.

### Radio Station Tuning Control

#### Seek Tuning (Alternative 1)

1. Press a seek button. The system stops at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

#### Radio Station List (Alternative 2)

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press the station button.
2. Press the left or right arrow keys to change ensembles. Navigate through the list and select the station by pressing the touchscreen area displaying your selection.

**Note:** The display only shows radio stations in the current ensemble.

### Manual Tuning (Alternative 3)

1. Turn the **TUNE** dial to the left or right.

**Note:** Frequencies are shown as Block IDs, for example 5A, 5B and 5C.

### Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite radio stations on any preset.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. When the system stores the station, a message appears. The system mutes momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored, press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

**Note:** Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system mutes when this happens. This may result in unexpected changes to radio station presets.

### Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on, follow the on-screen prompts to change the settings.

**Note:** Extra information may not always be available.

## USB PORT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any

# Audio System

hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

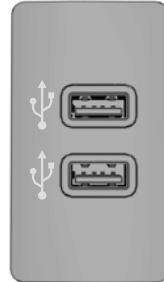
The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported).

## MEDIA HUB

You can locate the media hub inside the center console or on the instrument panel.



E205592



E211463

See your SYNC information.

## AUDIO SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

Message	Description and Action
Please check CD	General error message for CD fault conditions. For example cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted, etc. Make sure the disc is loaded correctly. Clean and re-try, or replace disc with known music disc. If the error persists contact an authorized dealer.
CD drive malfunction	General error message for a mechanism fault. The system has detected a fault that requires service.
CD drive high temp.	General error message for the mechanism being too hot. The unit will not work until it has cooled down. If the error persists contact an authorized dealer.



## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

### About SYNC

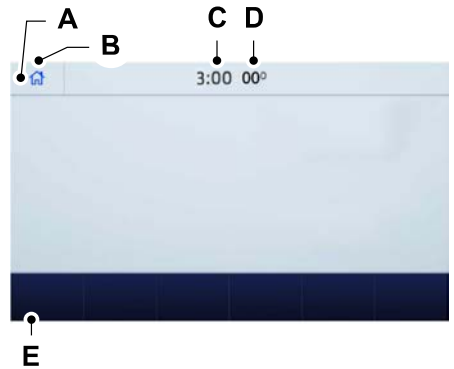
The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands and a touchscreen. The system provides easy interaction with audio, phone, navigation, mobile apps and settings.

**Note:** You can switch the system on and use it for up to an hour without switching the ignition on.

**Note:** You can use the system after you switch the ignition off for up to 10 minutes or until you open a door.



**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph).

## Using the Touchscreen



- A Status bar.
- B Home screen.
- C Clock. See **Settings** (page 409).
- D Outside air temperature.
- E Feature bar.

### Status Bar

-  Cell phone microphone muted.
-  Audio system muted.
-  Software update installed.
-  Wi-Fi connected.
-  Cell phone roaming.
-  Text message received.



Emergency Assistance off.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.



Traffic data source: Live traffic.



Traffic data source: Traffic broadcast.



Wireless charger active.

## Feature Bar



Select to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a Bluetooth device. See **Entertainment** (page 397).



Select to adjust climate settings. See **Climate** (page 399).



Select to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone. See **Phone** (page 402).



Select to use the navigation system. See **Navigation** (page 404).



Select to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device. See **Apps** (page 408).



Select to adjust system settings. See **Settings** (page 409).

## Cleaning the Touchscreen

See **Cleaning Displays and Screens** (page 348).

## Updating the System

### Updating the System Using a USB Drive

#### Downloading an Update

1. Go to the SYNC update page on the local Ford website.
2. Download the update.

**Note:** *The website notifies you if an update is available.*

3. Insert a USB drive into your computer.

**Note:** *The USB drive needs to be empty and meet the minimum requirements detailed on the website.*

4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

#### Installing an Update

**Note:** *You can use the system when installation is in progress.*

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

**Note:** *Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.*

### Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

#### Switching Automatic System Updates On

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Automatic updates**.
3. Switch **Automatic system updates** on.

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** You can use the system when download is in progress.

**Note:** If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

## Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network

See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 376).

## Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel and wait for the voice prompt.

**Note:** Press the voice control button again to interrupt a voice prompt and begin speaking.

**Note:** Turn the volume control when a voice prompt plays to adjust the volume.

**Note:** Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri on your iOS device.

The following voice commands are designed to help you from any screen:

- **List of commands**
- **Help**

The following tables list some of the more frequently used voice commands. For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.

## General

Voice Command	Description
___ list of commands	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. <sup>1</sup>
Cancel	Cancel an active voice session.
___ help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. <sup>1</sup>
Back	Return to the previous screen.
Main menu	Go to the main menu.

# SYNC™ 3

Voice Command	Description
Next page	Go to the next page.
Previous page	Go to the previous page.

<sup>1</sup> Add the name of the feature to the command.

## Entertainment

### Audio Source

Voice Command	Description
Radio	Use the radio.
CD Player	Use the CD player.
Bluetooth audio	Use a Bluetooth device.
USB	Use a USB or media player.

### Radio

Voice Command	Description
AM	Listen to AM radio.
___ AM	Tune to a specific AM frequency. <sup>1</sup>
DAB	Listen to DAB radio.
FM	Listen to FM radio.
___ FM	Tune to a specific FM frequency. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Add the radio frequency to two decimal places to the command.

# SYNC™ 3

## USB and Media Player

Voice Command	Description
Play album ___	Play your music by category. <sup>1</sup>
Play artist ___	
Play audiobook ___	
Play genre ___	
Play playlist ___	
Play podcast ___	
Play song ___	
Browse all albums	Browse music on a USB device.
Browse all artists	
Browse all audiobooks	
Browse all genres	
Browse all playlists	
Browse all podcasts	
Browse all tracks	
Browse album ___	Browse your music by category on a USB device. <sup>1</sup>
Browse artist ___	
Browse audiobook ___	
Browse genre ___	
Browse playlist ___	
Browse podcast ___	

<sup>1</sup> Add an album name, artist name, audiobook name, genre name, playlist name, podcast name or track name to the command. Say the name exactly as it appears on your device.

# SYNC™ 3

## Phone

Voice Command	Description
Pair phone	Pair a cell phone or Bluetooth enabled device.
Redial	Redial the last number that you dialed.
Dial ____	Dial a number. <sup>1</sup>
Call ____	Call a specific contact from your phonebook. <sup>2</sup>
Call ____ ____	Call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location. <sup>3</sup>
Listen to message	Listen to a text message.
Listen to message ____	Listen to a specific text message from a list of text messages.
Reply to message	Reply to the last text message.

<sup>1</sup> Add the number you want to dial to the command.

<sup>2</sup> Add a contact name from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

<sup>3</sup> Add a contact name and location from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

## Navigation (If Equipped)

### Setting a Destination

Voice Command	Description
Find an address	Enter a destination address. When prompted, provide the house number, the street and city.
Find a POI	Search for a point of interest by name or by category.
Find nearest ____	Search for a nearby point of interest by category. <sup>1</sup>
Find a POI category	Search for a point of interest category. <sup>1</sup>
Destination home	Set your saved home address as your destination.
Destination work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.
Previous destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
Favourite destinations	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.

<sup>1</sup> Add a point of interest category or the name of a major brand or chain to the command.

### Route Guidance

Voice Command	Description
Cancel route	Cancel the current route.
Reroute	Select an alternate route.
Repeat last instruction	Repeat the last guidance prompt.
Show route	Display an overview of the route.
Show map	Display the map on the touchscreen.
Show north up	Display a two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the touchscreen.
Show heading up	Display a two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the touchscreen.
Show 3D	Display a three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

## Apps

### General

Voice Command	Description
Mobile apps	Start an app. The system prompts your for the app name.
List apps	Get a list of apps running on your device.
Find apps	Search and connect to apps running on your device.

### Active App

Voice Command	Description
___ help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific app. <sup>1</sup>
Close ___	Close an app. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Add an app name to the command.

### Voice Settings

Voice Command	Description
Voice settings	Go to the voice settings menu.
Interaction mode standard	Switch long voice prompts on.
Interaction mode advanced	Switch short voice prompts on.
Call confirmation on	Switch call confirmation on. The system prompts you to confirm before making a call.
Call confirmation off	Switch call confirmation off. The system does not prompt you to confirm before making a call.
Voice command lists on	Switch the display of voice commands on.
Voice command lists off	Switch the display of voice commands off.



## Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction

If necessary, the system decreases the blower motor speed when you are using voice commands to reduce the amount of background noise in your vehicle. It returns to normal when you are finished.

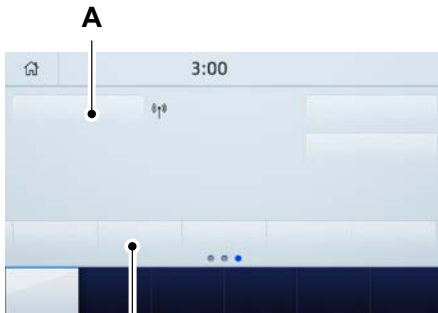
## Switching Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction Off

Simultaneously press the **A/C** and recirculated air buttons.

## ENTERTAINMENT



Select the audio option on the feature bar.



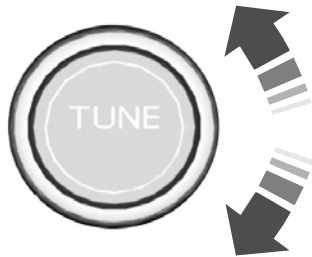
- A** Audio source. Select to choose a different audio source.
- B** Presets. Swipe left to view more presets.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

## Using the Radio

### Setting an AM/FM Radio Station

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **AM** or **FM**.



3. Rotate the control to change the frequency.

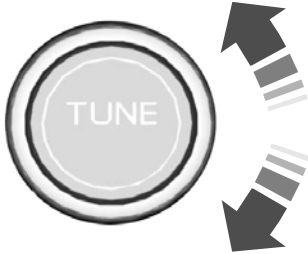
### Selecting a FM Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **FM**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select a radio station from the list.

### Selecting a Digital Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **DAB**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select an ensemble.
5. Select a radio station from the list.

## Manually Changing Digital Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change the station.

## Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

## Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the preset buttons.

**Note:** The radio briefly mutes to indicate the station has been stored.

**Note:** You can add additional preset pages using the settings option on the feature bar.

## Switching Traffic Announcements On

Select **Traffic (TA)**.

**Note:** If you switch traffic announcements on, traffic announcements broadcast by radio stations interrupt the current audio source to help you plan your route.

## Streaming Music From a Bluetooth Device

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 402).

Select **Sources**.



Select Bluetooth.

## Searching for Tracks on a Bluetooth Device

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

**Note:** Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

## Playing Tracks on a Bluetooth Device in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

## Repeating Tracks on a Bluetooth Device



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

**Note:** You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format Bluetooth device. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a Bluetooth device.

**Note:** A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.

## Playing Music From a USB or Media Player

Connect your device to a USB port.

Select **Sources**.



Select USB.

**Note:** *The system indexes your music before you can play it.*

## Searching for Tracks on a USB or Media Player

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

**Note:** *Select the cover art to view information about the current track.*

**Note:** *You can also browse by album, artist, audiobook, genre, playlist, podcast or track name.*

## Playing Tracks on a USB or Media Player in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

## Repeating Tracks on a USB or Media Player



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

**Note:** *You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format USB or media player. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a USB or media player.*

**Note:** *A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.*

## Supported Devices

The system supports most USB and media players, including iOS and Android devices.

## Supported File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, MP4, WMA, WAV, AAC, AIFF, APE, DSD, and FLAC audio file formats.
- MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC file extensions.
- FAT, exFAT, and NTFS file systems.

## Audio File Metadata

The system organizes files on your USB or media player by metadata tags. Metadata tags contain information about the file. If the metadata tags for the files on your USB or media player contain no information, the system classifies them as unknown. The system can index up to 50000 tracks on a USB device or media player, and up to 10 devices.

## CLIMATE

Touch the climate button on the touchscreen to access your climate control features.

**Note:** *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 409).*

## Accessing the Climate Control Menu



Touch the button to access additional controls for the front climate system.

## Directing the Airflow



Touch the button to direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.



Touch the button to direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.



Touch the button to direct airflow to the footwell air vents.

You can direct air through any combination of these air vents.

## Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Touch up or down to increase or decrease the volume of air that circulates in your vehicle.

## Setting the Temperature

Touch up or down on the left-hand temperature control to set the left-hand temperature.

**Note:** This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

Touch up or down on the right-hand temperature control to set the right-hand temperature.

## Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on automatic operation, then set the temperature.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

## Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



A pop-up appears on the screen to display the air conditioning options.

**MAX A/C:** Touch the button to activate and maximize cooling. The driver and passenger temperatures are set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

**A/C:** Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

**Note:** In certain conditions, such as maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.

## Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Touch the button.

## Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

## Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on temperature control for the right-hand side of the vehicle.

## Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off



Touch the button.

## Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off



Touch the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

## Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off



Touch the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog.

## Switching the Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

## Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off



Touch the button.

## Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off



Touch the button for maximum cooling.

Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

## Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Touch the button for maximum defrosting.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

**Note:** The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

## Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



Touch the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with **A/C**, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

## Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

## Accessing Rear Climate Controls



Touch the button to access additional controls for the rear climate system.

## Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator



Touch the button.

# SYNC™ 3

When on, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

## Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on rear automatic operation, then set the temperature.

## Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

## Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

## Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

## PHONE



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any

hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

## Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Go to the settings menu on your cell phone and switch Bluetooth on. Make sure your cell phone is discoverable. See your cell phone's user manual.



Select the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Pair phone**.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

**Note:** A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm that the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

**Note:** If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

## Using Your Cell Phone

### Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

# SYNC™ 3

## Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

### Your phone

Change ring tones, alerts or pair another cell phone.

### Change device

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

### Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

### Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

### Text messages

Display the cell phone messages.

### Siri

Connect to Siri on your iOS device.

## Using Text Messaging

Menu Item	Description
Hear it	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

## Apple CarPlay

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

## Phone Voice Assistant

Connect to the phone voice service on your Android device.

## Text Messaging

### Setting Text Message Notification

#### iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on.

#### Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on.

**Note:** *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.*

### Switching Apple CarPlay Off

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Apple CarPlay preferences**.

3. Switch **Apple CarPlay** off.

## Android Auto

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** You might need to enable *Android Auto* from the settings menu.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using *Android Auto*.

## Switching Android Auto Off

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Android Auto**.
3. Switch **Android Auto** off.

## NAVIGATION

**Note:** For more information, refer to the local Ford website.



Select the navigation option on the feature bar.

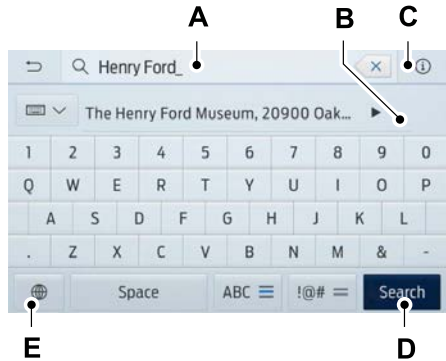


- A Map view menu.
- B Zoom out.

- C Zoom in.
- D Route guidance menu.
- E Destination entry menu.

## Setting a Destination

### Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen



- A Text entry field.
- B Automatic suggestions based on the text you enter.
- C Information icon.
- D Search.
- E Keyboard settings.

**Note:** Select one of the suggestions to copy the detail to the text entry field.

**Note:** You can enter a destination in a number of formats, **city street number, city number street, zip code or point of interest**.

**Note:** You do not have to enter the destination country.

**Note:** To enter mutated vowels or accented characters, for example **ã** or **é**, press and hold the corresponding character on the keyboard.

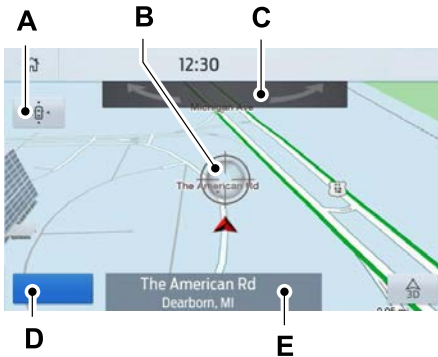


# SYNC™ 3

Select **Search**.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

## Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen



- A Re-center the map.
- B Selected location.
- C 3D map rotation. Swipe left or right.
- D Start route guidance.
- E Destination name.

Select the location on the map.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

## Changing the Format of the Map

Display the map in one of the following formats:

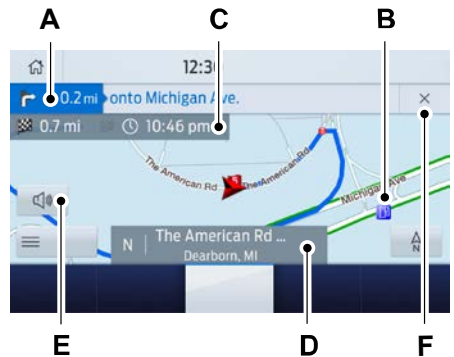
- A two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the screen.
- A two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the screen.
- A three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

## Zoom

Display more or less detail on the map.

**Note:** You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

## Route Guidance



- A Turn indicator. Select to hear the last guidance prompt.
- B Point of interest.
- C Estimated time of arrival, distance to destination or time to destination.
- D Current road.
- E Mute guidance prompts.
- F Cancel route guidance.

**Note:** To change guidance prompt volume, turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays.

# SYNC™ 3

## Route Guidance Menu

Menu Item	Description
Screen view	Adjust your map preferences for when route guidance is active.
Full map	View a full screen map when route guidance is active.
Motorway exit info	View exit information for your current route.
Turn list	View the turn list for your current route. Select a road to avoid it.
Traffic list	View traffic nearby or on your current route. <sup>1</sup>
Navigation settings	Adjust navigation settings.
Where am I?	View information about your current location.
Cancel route	Cancel route guidance.
Show route	View the entire current route on the map.
Re-route	View an alternative route compared to your current one.
Edit waypoints	Change the order or remove waypoints.
Optimise order	The system determines the order of waypoints for you.
Start	Go to the next screen and start the new route.
Search	Enter a destination address.
Home	Set your saved home address as your destination
Work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.
Favourites	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.
Previous destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
POI	Display the point of interest categories.

<sup>1</sup> Reliant upon traffic message channel or live traffic.

### Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

**Note:** *If you have inadvertently adjusted the volume to zero, press the turn indicator button to play the last voice prompt and then adjust the volume to the desired level.*

## Muting Guidance Prompts



Select the mute option on the screen to mute guidance prompts.

**Note:** The system mutes the next and all future guidance prompts.

## Adding Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route. You can add up to five waypoints.

1. Select the search option on the map.
2. Set a destination.
3. Select the flag icon.
4. Select **Start**.

## Canceling Route Guidance

### Canceling Route Guidance From the Route Guidance Menu



Select the route guidance menu option on the active guidance screen.

Select **Cancel route**.

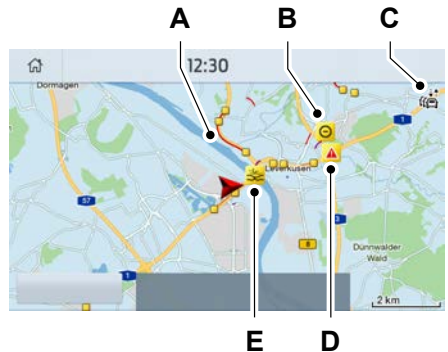
### Canceling Route Guidance From the Main Map



Select the icon in the upper right-hand corner of the main map to cancel route guidance.

## Live Traffic (If Equipped)

Live traffic provides near real-time traffic information to help you plan the fastest route to your destination. You must have an active subscription for Live Traffic.



- A Traffic congestion.
- B Road closure.
- C Live traffic active.
- D Urgent warning.
- E Traffic incident.

## Switching Live Traffic On

**Note:** Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 376).

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch **Vehicle connectivity** on.
5. Switch **Location** on.
6. Switch **Vehicle data & Remote ctrl** on.
7. Switch **Live Traffic** on.

## Navigation Map Updates

Please check the local Ford website or contact your dealership for navigation map updates.

# SYNC™ 3

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you can report them directly to HERE by visiting [www.here.com](http://www.here.com). HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

## APPS

**Note:** For more information about available apps, supported devices and troubleshooting, refer to our local website.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. See **Settings** (page 409).

**Note:** We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

**Note:** We recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app.

**Note:** Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system.

**Note:** Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

## Using Apps on an iOS Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Apple CarPlay off. See **Phone** (page 402).
2. Connect your device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.
3. If prompted to enable CarPlay, select **Disable**.

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Connect your device to a USB port if you want to use a navigation app. When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

## Using Apps on an Android Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 402).
2. Switch on **Enable Mobile apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
3. Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 402).
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select **Find mobile apps**.

**Note:** The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

## Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device

1. Connect your device to a USB port.

2. Switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 402).
3. Switch on **Enable Mobile apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
4. Select the apps option on the feature bar.
5. Select the navigation app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.*

**Note:** *Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.*

## SETTINGS



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select a tile to access the settings.



Select the option to display extra information.

### Ambient Lighting

You can adjust the ambient lighting settings.

### Android Auto

You can switch Android Auto on and off.

### Apple CarPlay

You can switch Apple CarPlay on and off.

### Audio

You can adjust the audio settings.

### Automatic Updates

You can switch automatic updates on and off and adjust the settings.

### Bluetooth

You can switch Bluetooth on and off and pair your cell phone.

### Clock

You can adjust the clock settings.

### Display

You can adjust display settings like brightness and auto dim.

### Emergency Assistance

You can switch Emergency Assistance on and off.

### FordPass

You can adjust the FordPass settings.

### General

You can adjust settings like language, measurement units, or reset the system.

### Mobile Apps

You can adjust permissions, enable, disable, and update mobile apps.

### Navigation (If Equipped)

You can adjust navigation settings like map preferences and route guidance.

### Phone

You can connect and disconnect your device, or manage the connected device settings.

### Seats (If Equipped)

You can adjust the position and the massage function of the seats.

### Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

# SYNC™ 3

---

## **Valet Mode (If Equipped)**

You can enable and disable the valet mode.

## **Vehicle (If Equipped)**

You can adjust the camera settings.

## **Voice Control**

You can adjust the voice control settings.

## **Wi-Fi**

You can switch Wi-Fi on and off and adjust the settings.

## SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

### Voice Recognition

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
<p>The system does not understand what I am saying.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are using the wrong voice commands.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 391).</li> <li>• For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– You are speaking too soon.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wait for the voice prompt before you speak.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect your device to a USB port.</li> <li>• If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– You are using the wrong voice commands.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 391).</li> <li>• For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.</li> </ul> <p>The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by the system.</p> </li> <li>– The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

# SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words does not seem to be very accurate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The system uses text-to-speech technology and uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## USB and Bluetooth Audio

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device malfunction.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cable connection issue.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incompatible cable.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>



# SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect device settings.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that your device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.</li> <li>• Check that your device is not set only to charge.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device lock screen enabled.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unlock your device before connecting it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not recognize my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not leave your device in your vehicle during very hot or very cold weather conditions.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect your device to a USB port.</li> <li>• If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot stream audio from my Bluetooth device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible device.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device not connected.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pair your device. See <b>Phone</b> (page 402).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Media player not running.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start the media player on your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not recognize the music on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Missing or incorrect audio file metadata, for example artist, song title, album or genre.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair the files on your device.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Corrupt files.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair the files on your device.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Copyright protected files.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a device that contains files that are not copyright protected.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Unsupported file format.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair or convert the files to a supported format. See <b>Entertainment</b> (page 397).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device indexing required.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Re-index your device. See <b>Settings</b> (page 409).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device lock screen enabled.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unlock your device before connecting it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Sometimes I cannot hear a track playing on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device malfunction.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
When I disconnect my iOS device the audio volume is set to maximum.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn the volume down on your device</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not play the tracks on my USB drive in the correct order.	<p>If the system does not play the tracks on your USB device in the correct order, the following information could help:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– If you are selecting USB as the audio source when the system is still indexing, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the root directory.</li> <li>– If you are selecting USB as the audio source after the system has finished indexing, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist.</li> <li>– If you are selecting the option to play all tracks from the browsing menu, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist.</li> <li>– If you are selecting a track when using the explore device option, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the folder you have selected. SYNC then plays all tracks in any subfolders in the folder you have selected.</li> </ul>

## Phone

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
During a call, I can hear excessive background noise.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check and adjust the audio settings on your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Cell phone malfunction.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone microphone muted.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unmute your cell phone microphone.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– System restart required.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restart the system. Switch the ignition off and open the door. Close the door and lock the vehicle. Wait until the touchscreen is off and any illuminated USB ports are not illuminated. Unlock the vehicle, switch the ignition on and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot download phone-book.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect system settings.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download on. See <b>Settings</b> (page 409).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
A message displays suggesting that my phone-book has downloaded but it is empty or it has missing contacts.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> <li>• Check the location of the missing contacts on your cell phone. If they are stored on the SIM card, move them to the cell phone memory.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect system settings.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download on. See <b>Settings</b> (page 409).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

# SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my cell phone.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> <li>• Install the latest cell phone firmware.</li> <li>• Delete your device from system and delete SYNC from your device and try again.</li> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download off. See <b>Settings</b> (page 409).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Text messaging does not work.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot hear text messages.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## Navigation (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot enter a street name when I am abroad.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect entry method.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter the street name with the country.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not recognize coordinates.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are using the wrong coordinates format.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the format ##. #####, ##. ##### (for N/S, E/W). Add a minus before coordinates if the direction is West and keep a positive value if the direction is East, for example 12.5412 means East and -12.5412 means West.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

# SYNC™ 3

## Apps

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Incompatible device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You need an Android device with OS 4.3 or higher or an iOS device with iOS 8.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your Android or iOS device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Download and install the latest version of the app.</li></ul></li><li>– AppLink compatible apps not running on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required.</li></ul></li><li>– Incorrect app settings.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow SYNC to access the app if required.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Apps failed to fully close.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Restart the apps and try again.</li><li>• If you have an Android device with apps that have an exit or quit option, use this and then restart the apps. Alternatively, use the force stop option in the settings menu on your device.</li><li>• If you have an iOS device with iOS 7.0 or higher, tap the home button on your device twice and then swipe the app upward to close it.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Switch Bluetooth off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li></ul></li></ul>

## SYNC™ 3

<b>Symptom</b>	<b>Possible Cause and Resolution</b>
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Cable connection issue.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Device volume is low.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Turn the volume up on your device.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available Bluetooth ports, the system cannot find all of them.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.</li></ul></li></ul>

## Wi-Fi Connectivity

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Password error.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter the correct network password.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Weak network signal.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Multiple access points in range with the same SSID.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Weak network signal.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Obstructed network signal.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

# SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Hidden network.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make the network visible and try again.</li></ul></li></ul>
Software downloads take too long.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Weak network signal<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li><li>– Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.</li></ul></li></ul>
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– No software update available.</li><li>– Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.</li></ul></li></ul>

## Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.
3. Press the audio unit power button to switch the system on.

**Note:** You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working. The system reset is designed to restore functionality and not delete any data that you have stored.

## Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.



# Appendices

## ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

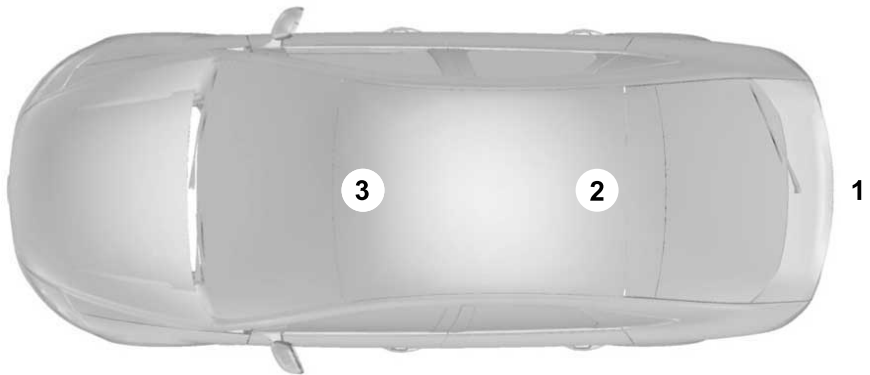


**WARNING:** Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

**Note:** We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

**Note:** Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

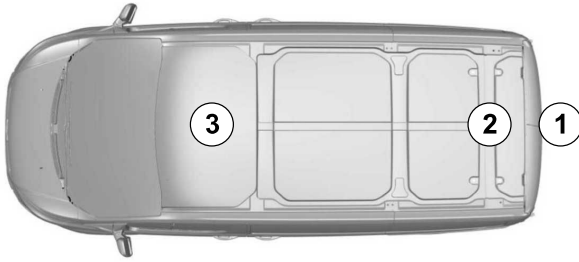
### Car/SUV



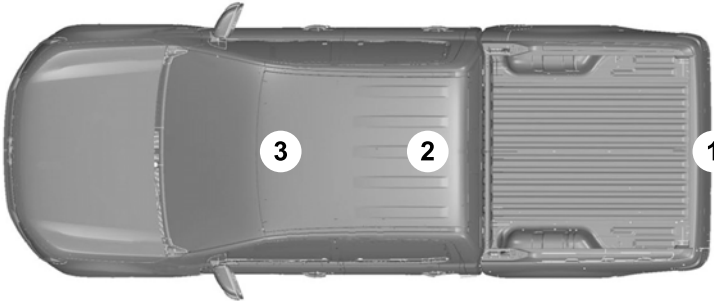
# Appendices

---

## Van



## Truck



# Appendices

---

<b>Frequency Band MHz</b>	<b>Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)</b>	<b>Antenna Positions</b>
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

# Appendices

---

## ECALL USER INFORMATION

### eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3

#### 1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM

- 1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **eCall** (page 40).
- 1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.
- 1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.
- 1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **eCall** (page 40).
- 1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **eCall** (page 40).

#### 2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING

- 2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).
- 2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.
- 2.3. Types of data and its recipients.
- 2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:
  - Vehicle Identification Number.
  - Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
  - Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).
  - Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.

# Appendices

---

- Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
  - Any additional data (if applicable): -
- 2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.  
Additional information (if available): -
- 2.4. Arrangements for data processing.
- 2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.  
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.  
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.
- 2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.
- 2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.  
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.
- 2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.
- 2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

# Appendices

---

- 2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.
- (1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).
  - (2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).
  - (3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

## **3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)**

- 3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the FordPass app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.
- 3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC and 2002/58/EC.
  - 3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
  - 3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).

# Appendices

- 3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.
- 3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the FordPass app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

### Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR

# Appendices

---

COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:**

You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:**

You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.

- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.

- **Internet-Based Services**

**Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.

- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional



# Appendices

---

charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.

- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

**UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:** If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

**INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:** All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

# Appendices

---

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS

LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

## **SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

### General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

# Appendices

---

- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

# Appendices

---

## Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

## Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

# Appendices

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

## Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

## Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS.

Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

## Appendices

---

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see [adr.org](http://adr.org) or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

### **(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

# Appendices

---

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(i) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

## **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

## **1. Safe and Lawful Use**

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

# Appendices

---

## 2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## 3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### 3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

## 4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others



# Appendices

---

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

## **5. Limitation of Liability**

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

# Appendices

---

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

### **8.3**

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

### **8.4**

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

### **8.5**

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

# Appendices

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

## 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors:

### 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

### 9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

#### Terms and Conditions

**Permitted Use.** You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

# Appendices

---

**Restrictions.** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning.** The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty.** This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control.** You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

# Appendices

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement.** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Governing Law.** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users.** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

## I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

# Appendices

---

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: “This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen’s Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved.”

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources Canada (“NRCan”). Such data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

# Appendices

---

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

IV. Middle East Territory

# Appendices

---

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	“© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

## V. Europe Territory

### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: “Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l’Equipement et des Transports.”

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client’s entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey (“OS”) to create and sell paper maps, Client’s paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client’s complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic



# Appendices

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlegendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"

# Appendices

Spain	“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”
Sweden	“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”
Switzerland	“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.”

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

## VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited ([www.pasma.com.au](http://www.pasma.com.au)).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

## **AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure**

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

# Appendices

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

## **VII. China Territory**

### ***Personal Use Only***

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

# Appendices

---

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

## **Restrictions**

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

## **Limited Warranty**

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

## **Customer Remedies**

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

## **No Other Warranty:**

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Limited Liability:**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

# Appendices

---

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Export Control**

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

## **IP Protection**

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

## **Entire Agreement**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

## Appendices

---

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

# Appendices

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

## Radio Frequency Statement

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

## Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

## SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

### Website

[www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/](http://www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/)

## 1. Acceptance

# Appendices

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

## 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

## 3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

## 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

## 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

## 6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

## 7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.



# Appendices

---

## **DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY**

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit [www.wirelessconformity.ford.com](http://www.wirelessconformity.ford.com).



# Index

## 1

180 Degree Camera.....	239
Camera Views.....	239
Using the 180 degree camera system.....	239

## A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	128
About This Manual.....	9
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	215
ABS driving hints	
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	216
Accessories	
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	12
ACC	
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Stop and Go.....	247
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles Without: Stop and Go.....	241
Acknowledgments.....	9
Active Park Assist.....	229
Using Active Park Assist.....	230
Adaptive Headlamps.....	85
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Manual Adjustable Steering Column.....	70
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Power Adjustable Steering Column.....	70
Easy Entry and Exit Feature.....	71
End of Travel Position.....	71
Memory Feature.....	71
AFS	
See: Adaptive Headlamps.....	85
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control.....	128

## Alarm

See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....	66
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....	67
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm.....	69
All-Wheel Drive.....	213
Ambient Lighting.....	87
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With:	
Integral Battery.....	66
Arming the Alarm.....	67
Battery Back-up Sounder.....	66
Disarming the Alarm.....	67
Full and Reduced Guard.....	67
Inclination Sensors.....	66
Interior Sensors.....	66
Perimeter Alarm.....	66
Triggering the Alarm.....	66
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....	67
Alarm System.....	67
Arming the Alarm.....	69
Disarming the Alarm.....	69
Full and Reduced Guard.....	68
Triggering the Alarm.....	68
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm.....	69
Arming the Alarm.....	69
Disarming the Alarm.....	69
Appendices.....	421
Apps.....	408
Using Apps on an Android Device.....	408
Using Apps on an iOS Device.....	408
Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device.....	408
Ashtray.....	163
At a Glance.....	19
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	105
Headlamps On Warning Chime.....	105
Key in Ignition Warning Chime.....	105
Keyless Warning Alert.....	105
Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....	105
Audio System.....	381
General Information.....	381
Audio System - Troubleshooting.....	388
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD.....	382

# Index

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony AM/ FM/CD.....	384
Menu Structure.....	385
Autolamps.....	79
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps.....	80
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD.....	132
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD.....	130
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Sony Audio System.....	128
Automatic Crash Notification System.....	40
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	300
Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions.....	300
Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	300
What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	300
Automatic High Beam Control.....	80
About Automatic High Beam Control.....	81
Automatic High Beam Indicator.....	81
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....	81
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On or Off.....	81
Automatic Transmission - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	210
Automatic Return to Park.....	211
SelectShift™.....	210
Stay in Neutral Mode.....	211
Transmission Selector Positions.....	210
Automatic Transmission - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	206
Automatic Return to Park.....	208
Automatic Transmission Information Messages.....	209
Drive (D).....	207
Grade Assist.....	208
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck in Mud or Snow.....	209
Low (L).....	207
Neutral (N).....	207
Park (P).....	207
Reverse (R).....	207
Stay in Neutral Mode.....	208
Understanding the Shift Positions of Your Automatic Transmission.....	207
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning.....	179
Auto-Start-Stop.....	178
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	179
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	179
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	178
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	179
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions.....	180
Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages.....	179
Autowipers.....	73
Settings.....	74
Auxiliary Heater.....	137
Programming the Fuel-Operated Parking Heater.....	137
Auxiliary Power Points.....	160
12 Volt DC Power Point.....	160
230 Volt Power Point.....	160
AWD See: All-Wheel Drive.....	213
<b>B</b>	
Battery See: Changing the 12V Battery - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	333
See: Changing the 12V Battery - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	335
Blind Spot Information System.....	264
.....	264
Switching the System On and Off.....	265
System Errors.....	265
Using the Blind Spot Information System.....	264
BLIS See: Blind Spot Information System.....	264
Bonnet Lock See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	323
Brake Fluid Check.....	332
Brakes.....	215
General Information.....	215
Breaking-In.....	292
Brakes and Clutch.....	292
Tires.....	292
Bulb Specification Chart.....	344

# Index

## C

### Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L

EcoBlue.....	369
Brake System.....	371
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue) Tank.....	371
Engine.....	370
Fuel Tank.....	371
Washer Reservoir.....	371

### Capacities and Specifications.....363

Capacities and Specifications - Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	372
Brake System.....	373
Engine.....	372
Fuel Tank.....	373
Washer Reservoir.....	373

### Cargo Nets.....278

Cargo Net - Cargo Floor Net.....	278
Cargo Net - Loadnet.....	278

### Catalytic Converter.....194

On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....	195
Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing.....	195

### Center Console.....162

Changing a Bulb.....	340
Front Fog Lamp.....	342
Headlamp.....	340
Rear Lamp.....	342
Side Direction Indicator.....	342

### Changing a Fuse.....321

Fuses.....	321
------------	-----

### Changing the 12V Battery - Excluding:

Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	333
Remove and Reinstall the Battery.....	334

### Changing the 12V Battery - Hybrid

Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	335
Remove and Reinstall the Battery.....	336

### Changing the Front Wiper Blades.....337

Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades.....	337
Service Position.....	337

### Changing the Rear Wiper Blades.....338

Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	380
--	-----

### Checking Local Hazard Information

Status.....	276
-------------	-----

### Checking MyKey System Status.....55

MyKey Distance.....	55
---------------------	----

Number of Admin Keys.....	55
Number of MyKeys.....	55
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	337
Childminder Mirror.....	92
Child Restraint Positioning.....	26
Child Safety.....	22
Child Safety Locks.....	30
Cleaning the Exterior.....	346
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	347
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....	346
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	346
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	347
Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	347
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	346
Cleaning the Underbody.....	347
Cleaning Wheels.....	346
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	346
Cleaning the Interior.....	347
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	348
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	348
Cleaning Fabric Seats and Headliners.....	348
Cleaning Leather and Vinyl.....	348
Cleaning Moonroof Tracks.....	349
Cleaning Plastic.....	348
Cleaning Seatbelts.....	349
Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	349
Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	347
Clearing All MyKeys.....	54
Climate.....	399
Accessing Rear Climate Controls.....	401
Accessing the Climate Control Menu.....	399
Directing the Airflow.....	399
Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator.....	401
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	400
Setting the Temperature.....	400
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	400
Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off.....	400
Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off.....	401
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	401

# Index

Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off.....	402
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	401
Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off.....	400
Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off.....	400
Switching the Climate Control On and Off.....	400
Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off.....	400
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	401
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	401
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....	401
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off.....	401
Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off.....	402
Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off.....	402
Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off.....	402
Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off.....	401
Climate Control.....	128
Climate Controlled Seats.....	156
Cooled Seats.....	157
Clutch Fluid Check.....	333
Cold Weather Precautions.....	292
Connected Vehicle.....	376
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	376
Connected Vehicle Data - Vehicles With: Modem.....	16
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	376
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	376
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Modem.....	377
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	378
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	376
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	376
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	376
What Is the Modem.....	376
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	376
Coolant Check	
See: Engine Coolant Check - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	330
See: Engine Coolant Check - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	331
Cornering Lamps.....	86
Crash and Breakdown Information.....	300
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	300
Post-Crash Alert System.....	300
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	52
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start.....	52
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	380
Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	380
Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password.....	380
Cross Traffic Alert.....	265
Blocked Sensors.....	267
Switching the System Off and On.....	268
System Errors.....	268
System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts.....	267
System Limitations.....	268
Using the Cross Traffic Alert System.....	266
Cruise Control.....	240
Principle of Operation.....	240
Cruise control	
See: Using Cruise Control.....	240
Cup Holders.....	162

## D

Data Privacy.....	14
Services That Third Parties Provide.....	14
Services That We Provide.....	14
Declaration of Conformity.....	453
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	202
Diesel Particulate Filter Automatic Regeneration.....	203
On-Board Diagnostics System.....	202
Digital Radio.....	386
General Information.....	386

# Index

Using Digital Audio Broadcast and SYNC.....	387
Direction Indicators.....	86
Dog Guard.....	281
Installing behind the front seats.....	281
Installing behind the rear seats.....	283
Doors and Locks.....	57
Drive Control.....	274
Driver Select Suspension.....	274
Driver Airbag.....	34
Driver Alert.....	258
Principle of Operation.....	258
Using Driver Alert.....	259
Driver Knee Airbag.....	37
Driving Aids.....	254
Driving Economically.....	292
Driving Hints.....	292
Driving Through Shallow Water.....	292
<b>E</b>	
eCall.....	40
Automatically Initiated Emergency Call.....	41
Changing the Backup Battery.....	41
Emergency Call System Indicator.....	40
Emergency Call System Information Messages.....	41
Manually Initiated Emergency Call.....	41
eCall User Information.....	424
eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3.....	424
Eco.....	269
Eco Mode System Display.....	269
Principle of Operation.....	269
Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission.....	216
Applying the Electric Parking Brake.....	216
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	217
Electric Parking Brake Information Messages.....	217
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	217
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge.....	217
Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission.....	218
Applying the Electric Parking Brake.....	218
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	219
Electric Parking Brake Information Messages.....	220
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	219
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge.....	219
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	421
Emergency Assistance.....	42
Emergency Call System Data - Vehicles With: eCall.....	17
Emergency Equipment.....	301
Enabling Local Hazard Information.....	276
Enabling Remote Start.....	126
End User License Agreement.....	427
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA).....	427
Engine Block Heater.....	172
Using the Engine Block Heater.....	173
Engine Coolant Check - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	330
Adding Coolant.....	331
Engine Coolant Check - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	331
Adding Engine Coolant.....	331
Adding Inverter System Controller Coolant.....	332
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel.....	330
Engine Cooling Fan - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	330
Engine Emission Control.....	194
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	66
Engine Oil Check.....	329
Adding Engine Oil.....	329
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBlue.....	329
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.5L Duratec, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	329
Entertainment.....	397
Playing Music From a USB or Media Player.....	399

# Index

Streaming Music From a Bluetooth Device.....	398
Using the Radio.....	397
Environment.....	18
EPB	
See: Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission.....	216
See: Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission.....	218
Event Data.....	15
Exterior Mirrors.....	90
Auto-Dimming Feature.....	92
Auto-Folding Mirrors.....	91
Blind Spot Monitor.....	92
Direction Indicator Mirrors.....	92
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....	90
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	92
Loose Mirror.....	91
Memory Mirrors.....	92
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	90
Power-Folding Mirrors.....	90
Reverse Mirror Dipping.....	91

## F

Fan	
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel.....	330
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	330
Fastening the Seatbelts.....	31
Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy.....	32
Flat Tire Inflation	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	350
Floor Mats.....	293
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	84
Fog Lamps - Rear	
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....	84
Front Fog Lamps.....	84
Front Parking Aid.....	226
Object Distance Indicator.....	227
Front View Camera.....	273
Using the Front View Camera.....	274
Front Wiper Blades	
See: Changing the Front Wiper Blades.....	337
Fuel and Refueling.....	184
Fuel Burning Heater	
See: Auxiliary Heater.....	137

Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.0L EcoBlue.....	374
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	374
European Directive 1999/94/EC.....	374
Fuel Economy and CO2 Emissions.....	374
Fuel Consumption Figures - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	375
Fuel Consumption.....	192
Advertised Capacity.....	192
Fuel Economy.....	192
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	185
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	185
Long-Term Storage.....	185
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	184
Long-Term Storage.....	185
Fuses.....	302
Fuse Specification Chart - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	302
Fuse on Battery.....	311
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....	308
Power Distribution Box.....	302
Reductant Dosage Control Module Fuse Box.....	312
Fuse Specification Chart - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	313
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....	319
Power Distribution Box.....	313

## G

Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	200
Gasoline Particulate Filter Information Messages.....	201
Gasoline Particulate Filter Regeneration.....	201
Gasoline Particulate Filter Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	201
Gauges - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	96
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	98
Fuel Gauge.....	98
Information Display.....	97
Gauges - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	99
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	100
Fuel Gauge.....	100
Information Display.....	99



# Index

Gearbox	
See: Transmission.....	206
General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	45
Glare-Free High Beam.....	81
About Glare-Free High Beam.....	82
Glare-Free High Beam Indicator.....	83
Overriding Glare-Free High Beam.....	83
Switching Glare-Free High Beam On or Off.....	83
Global Opening and Closing.....	89
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....	90
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	89
Using Global Closing.....	89
Using Global Opening.....	89
<b>H</b>	
Hazard Flashers.....	294
Hazard Flasher Indicator.....	294
Switching the Hazard Flashers On or Off.....	294
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	80
Headlamp Leveling.....	84
Headlamp Removal	
See: Removing a Headlamp.....	338
Headlamp Washers.....	76
Headrest	
See: Head Restraints.....	141
Head Restraints.....	141
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	142
Tilting Head Restraints.....	142
Heated Seats.....	156
Heated Steering Wheel.....	71
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	136
Heated Exterior Mirror.....	137
Heated Rear Window.....	137
Heated Windshield.....	137
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	128
High Voltage Battery.....	205
General Information.....	205
Hill Start Assist.....	220
Switching the System On and Off.....	221
Using Hill Start Assist.....	221
Hints on Controlling the Interior	
Climate.....	134
Cooling the Interior Quickly.....	135
General Hints.....	134
Heating the Interior Quickly.....	134
Recommended Settings for Cooling.....	135
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	135
Window Defogging in Cold Weather.....	136
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	216
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	323
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	158
Hybrid Vehicle Frequently Asked Questions.....	176
Hybrid Vehicle Operation.....	174
Battery.....	174
Braking.....	174
Driving.....	174
Driving to Optimize Fuel Economy.....	175
Starting.....	174
Stopping.....	174
Transmission Operation.....	174
<b>I</b>	
Information Displays.....	106
General Information - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	106
General Information - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	109
Information Messages.....	111
Active Park Assist.....	111
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	112
Airbag.....	112
Alarm.....	112
All-Wheel Drive.....	113
Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	113
Automatic High Beam Control.....	113
Auto-Start-Stop.....	114
Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert Systems.....	114
Brake System.....	115
Diesel Engine.....	115
Doors and Locks.....	115
Driver Alert.....	116
Electric Parking Brake.....	116
Engine.....	117
Fuel System.....	117
High Voltage Battery.....	118

# Index

Hill Start Assist.....	117
Lane Keeping System.....	118
Maintenance.....	119
MyKey.....	119
Parking Aid.....	120
Pre-Collision Assist.....	120
Remote Control.....	120
Seats.....	121
Selective Catalytic Reductant System.....	121
Stability Control.....	122
Starting System.....	122
Steering System.....	123
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	123
Towing.....	124
Traction Control.....	124
Transmission.....	124
Installing Child Restraints.....	22
Attaching a Child Restraint With a Support Leg.....	25
Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers.....	25
Booster Seats.....	23
Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups.....	23
ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	24
Top Tether Anchor Points.....	25
Instrument Cluster.....	96
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	80
Instrument Panel - LHD.....	19
Instrument Panel - RHD.....	20
Interior Lamps.....	87
Interior Lamp Function.....	87
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	87
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	87
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	87
Interior Mirror.....	92
Automatic Dimming Mirror.....	92
Manual Dimming Mirror.....	92
Introduction.....	9

## J

Jump Starting the Vehicle - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	294
To Connect the Booster Cables.....	295
To Start the Engine.....	296
Jump Starting the Vehicle - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	296
Preparing Your Vehicle.....	296
To Connect the Booster Cables.....	297
To Start Your Vehicle.....	298

## K

Keyless Entry.....	59
Disabled Passive Keys.....	61
General Information.....	59
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade.....	61
Locking Your Vehicle.....	60
Opening the Liftgate.....	61
Passive Key.....	60
Unlocking Your Vehicle.....	60
Keys and Remote Controls.....	45

## L

Lane Keeping System.....	260
Switching the System On and Off.....	260
Liftgate.....	62
Lighting Control.....	78
Headlamp Flasher.....	79
High Beams.....	79
Parking Lamps.....	78
Lighting.....	78
General Information.....	78
Load Carriers See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	280
Load Carrying.....	277
General Information.....	277
Local Hazard Information.....	276
Local Hazard Information Precautions.....	276
Locking and Unlocking.....	57
Autolock.....	58
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside.....	58

# Index

Locking and Unlocking the Doors	
Individually with the Key Blade.....	59
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade.....	58
Power Door Locks.....	57
Remote Control.....	57
Luggage Anchor Points.....	277
Luggage Covers.....	280
Lug Nuts.....	359
<b>M</b>	
Maintenance.....	323
General Information.....	323
Manual Liftgate.....	62
Closing the Liftgate.....	62
Opening the Liftgate.....	62
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 4-Way Manual Seat.....	143
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 8-Way Manual Seat.....	143
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	145
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	144
Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	144
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	145
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	144
Manual Transmission.....	206
General Information.....	206
Shifting Into Reverse Gear.....	206
Media Hub.....	388
Memory Function.....	147
Easy Entry and Exit Feature.....	148
Linking a Preset Position to your Remote Control or Keyless Entry Key Fob.....	148
Saving a PreSet Position.....	148
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	106
Mirrors	
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	136
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	88
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	12
Mobile Device Data - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	16
Moonroof - Vehicles With: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel.....	95
Bounce-Back.....	95
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	95
MyKey Settings.....	51
Configurable Settings.....	51
Non-Configurable Settings.....	51
MyKey – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	56
What is an admin key?.....	56
Why can I not clear the MyKeys?.....	56
Why can I not create a MyKey?.....	56
Why can I not program a MyKey?.....	56
Why can I not start the engine with a MyKey?.....	56
Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?.....	56
MyKey – Troubleshooting - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start.....	55
What is an admin key?.....	55
Why can I not clear the MyKeys?.....	55
Why can I not create a MyKey?.....	55
Why can I not program a MyKey?.....	55
Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?.....	55
MyKey™.....	51
Principle of Operation.....	51
<b>N</b>	
Navigation.....	404
Changing the Format of the Map.....	405
Live Traffic.....	407
Navigation Map Updates.....	407
Route Guidance.....	405
Setting a Destination.....	404
Zoom.....	405
<b>O</b>	
Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	329
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	323
Closing the Hood.....	324
Opening the Hood.....	323
Overhead Console.....	163
<b>P</b>	
Parking Aids.....	224
Principle of Operation.....	224



# Index

Directing Air to the Overhead Air Vents.....	136
Rear Passenger Climate Control Lock Indicator.....	136
Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off.....	136
Rear Seat Armrest.....	163
Rear Seats.....	149
Creating a Level Load Floor.....	155
EasyFold™ Folding Seat .....	153
Second Row Seats.....	149
Third Row Seats.....	154
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	277
In-Floor Storage - Second Row.....	277
Load Floor Storage.....	278
Rear View Camera.....	236
Camera Guidelines.....	237
Manual Zoom.....	238
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....	238
Rear Camera Delay.....	238
Using the Rear View Camera System.....	236
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	236
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	76
Rear Window Washer.....	76
Rear Window Wiper.....	76
Rear Wiper Blades	
See: Changing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	338
Refueling - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	187
Refueling System Overview.....	187
Refueling System Warning.....	189
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	187
Refueling - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	189
Fuel Filler Door Manual Override Lever.....	191
System Warnings.....	191
Remote Control.....	45
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	47
Locating Your Vehicle.....	50
Passive Key.....	45
Using the Key Blade.....	46
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle.....	126
Remote Start Limitations.....	126
Remote Start.....	126
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With:	
Heated Steering Wheel.....	127
Climate Control Settings.....	127
Heated Seat and Steering Wheel Settings.....	127
Setting the Remote Start Duration.....	127
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel.....	126
Climate Control Settings.....	126
Heated Seat Settings.....	127
Setting the Remote Start Duration.....	127
Removing a Headlamp.....	338
Removing a Rear Lamp.....	339
Rear Direction Indicator.....	339
Reversing Lamp.....	339
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	349
Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	12
Collision Repairs.....	12
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....	12
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	12
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	50
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	361
Restarting the Engine.....	178
Roadside Emergencies.....	294
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	280
Towbar Carriers.....	281
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	292
Running Out of Fuel.....	185
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	186
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	186

## S

Safety Precautions.....	184
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....	32
Seatbelt Reminder.....	33
Seatbelt Monitor.....	33
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder Off.....	33
Seatbelts.....	31
Seats.....	141
Security.....	66

# Index

Selective Catalytic Reductant System - 2.0L EcoBlue.....	196
AdBlue® Consumption.....	199
AdBlue® Guidelines.....	196
Filling the AdBlue® Tank.....	197
Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Container.....	198
Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump.....	197
Selective Catalytic Reductant System Information Messages.....	199
Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp.....	199
Service Data.....	15
Settings Data.....	16
Comfort and Convenience Data.....	16
Entertainment Data.....	16
Settings.....	409
Ambient Lighting.....	409
Android Auto.....	409
Apple CarPlay.....	409
Audio.....	409
Automatic Updates.....	409
Bluetooth.....	409
Clock.....	409
Display.....	409
Emergency Assistance.....	409
FordPass.....	409
General.....	409
Mobile Apps.....	409
Navigation.....	409
Phone.....	409
Seats.....	409
Sound.....	409
Valet Mode.....	410
Vehicle.....	410
Voice Control.....	410
Wi-Fi.....	410
Side Airbags.....	36
Airbag Secondary Warning Audible Warning.....	37
Airbag Warning Lamp.....	37
Side Curtain Airbags.....	37
Side Sensing System.....	228
Object Distance Indicator.....	229
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	141
Snow Chains See: Using Snow Chains.....	356
Speed Control See: Cruise Control.....	240
Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	254
Principle of Operation.....	254
Using the Intelligent Speed Limiter .....	255
Using the system.....	254
Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: Cruise Control.....	256
Principle of Operation.....	256
Using the Intelligent Speed Limiter .....	257
Using the Speed Limiter.....	256
Stability Control.....	223
Principle of Operation.....	223
Starting a Diesel Engine - Automatic Transmission.....	166
Engine Warning Lamps.....	168
Failure to Start.....	167
Glow Plug Indicator.....	168
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	168
Important Ventilating Information.....	168
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	167
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	167
Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....	166
Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch.....	167
Starting a Diesel Engine - Manual Transmission.....	168
Engine Warning Lamps.....	170
Failure to Start.....	169
Glow Plug Indicator.....	170
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	169
Important Ventilating Information.....	170
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	169
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	169
Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....	168
Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch.....	169
Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	170
Automatic Shutdown.....	171
Fast Restart.....	171
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	172
Important Ventilating Information.....	172

# Index

Switching Off Your Vehicle When It Is Moving.....	172
Switching Off Your Vehicle When It Is Stationary.....	171
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	164
General Information.....	164
Steering Wheel Lock.....	166
Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....	166
Steering Wheel.....	70
Stopping the Engine.....	178
Storage Compartments.....	162
Storing a First Aid Kit.....	301
Storing a Warning Triangle.....	301
Sunroof	
See: Moonroof - Vehicles With: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel.....	95
Sun Shades - Vehicles With: Panoramic Roof Panel.....	93
Bounce-Back.....	94
Opening and Closing the Sun Shade.....	94
Sun Shade Relearning.....	94
Sun Visors.....	93
Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....	93
Supplementary Restraints System.....	34
Principle of Operation.....	34
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....	178
Switching Off the Engine.....	172
Vehicles With a Turbocharger.....	172
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off.....	158
Semiannual Reminder.....	158
Symbols Glossary.....	9
SYNC™ 3.....	389
General Information.....	389
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....	411
Additional Information and Assistance.....	420
Apps.....	417
Navigation.....	416
Phone.....	415
Resetting the System.....	420
USB and Bluetooth Audio.....	412
Voice Recognition.....	411
Wi-Fi Connectivity.....	419

## T

Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	363
Tire Care.....	355
Tire Rotation.....	355
Tire Inflation When Punctured	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	350
Tire Pressure Monitoring System	
Limitations.....	360
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	360
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....	361
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....	361
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Information Messages.....	362
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Warning Lamps.....	361
Tire Pressures.....	357
Tire Repair Kit	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	350
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	350
After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	354
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	351
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	350
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Detachable Tow Ball.....	286
Attaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	287
Detaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	287
Tow Ball Arm Guidelines.....	288
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Retractable Tow Ball.....	289
Driving with a Trailer.....	290
Maintenance.....	290
Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm.....	289
Towbar Dimensions - Galaxy.....	365
Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight.....	366
Towbar Dimensions - S-MAX.....	367
Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight.....	368
Towing a Trailer.....	285

# Index

Towing Points.....	299
Attaching the Towing Eye.....	299
Front Towing Point.....	299
Rear Towing Point.....	299
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Automatic Transmission.....	291
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission.....	291
Towing.....	285
Traction Control.....	222
Principle of Operation.....	222
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	268
Principle of Operation.....	268
Using Traffic Sign Recognition.....	269
Trailer Sway Control.....	286
Transmission.....	206
<b>U</b>	
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue, LHD.....	325
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue, RHD.....	326
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L Duratec, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), LHD.....	327
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L Duratec, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), RHD.....	328
Unique Driving Characteristics.....	174
USB Port.....	387
Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Stop and Go.....	247
Automatic Cancellation.....	250
Blocked Sensor.....	252
Canceling the Set Speed.....	250
Changing the Set Speed.....	250
Detection Issues.....	251
Following a Vehicle.....	248
Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop.....	249
Hilly Condition Usage.....	251
Overriding the Set Speed.....	250
Park Brake Application.....	251
Resuming the Set Speed.....	250
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed.....	248
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	248
Setting the Gap Distance.....	249
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off.....	251
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On.....	248
Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....	253
System Not Available.....	252
Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles Without: Stop and Go.....	241
Automatic Cancellation.....	244
Blocked Sensor.....	246
Canceling the Set Speed.....	244
Changing the Set Speed.....	243
Detection Issues.....	244
Following a Vehicle.....	242
Hilly Condition Usage.....	244
Overriding the Set Speed.....	243
Resuming the Set Speed.....	244
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed.....	242
Setting the Gap Distance.....	243
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off.....	244
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On.....	241
Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....	247
System Not Available.....	245
Using All-Wheel Drive.....	213
Driving on Snow and Ice.....	213
Using Cruise Control.....	240
Canceling the Set Speed.....	240
Changing the Set Speed.....	240
Cruise Control Indicator.....	241
Resuming the Set Speed.....	240
Setting the Cruise Speed.....	240
Switching Cruise Control Off.....	240
Switching Cruise Control On.....	240
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	55
Using Snow Chains.....	356
Using Stability Control.....	223
Using Summer Tires.....	355
Using Traction Control.....	222
Switching the System Off.....	222
System Indicator Lights and Messages.....	222
Using a Switch.....	222
Using the Information Display Controls.....	222



# Index

Using Voice Recognition.....	391
Apps.....	396
Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction.....	397
Entertainment.....	392
General.....	391
Navigation.....	395
Phone.....	394
Voice Settings.....	396
Using Winter Tires.....	356
<b>V</b>	
Vehicle Care.....	346
Cleaning the Exterior.....	346
Cleaning the Interior.....	347
Vehicle Dimensions - Galaxy.....	363
Vehicle Dimensions - S-MAX.....	364
Vehicle Identification Number.....	369
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	368
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	380
Ventilation See: Climate Control.....	128
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	360
VIN See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	369
<b>W</b>	
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	101
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	101
Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp.....	101
Automatic High Beam Lamp.....	102
Battery Warning Lamp.....	102
Blind Spot Monitor Indicator.....	102
Brake System Warning Lamp.....	102
Cruise Control.....	102
Direction Indicator.....	102
Door Ajar.....	102
Electric Park Brake.....	102
Engine Coolant Temperature.....	102
Engine Oil Warning Lamp.....	102
Engine Warning Lamps.....	103
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp.....	103
Front Airbag Warning Lamp.....	103
Front Fog Lamps Indicator.....	103
Frost Warning Lamp.....	103
Fuel Operated Heater Enabled.....	103
Fuel Operated Heater Operating.....	104
Headlamp and Parking Lamp Indicator.....	104
High Beam Indicator.....	104
High Voltage Electric System Failure Warning Lamp.....	104
Hill Start Assist Indicator.....	104
Hood Ajar.....	104
Lane Keeping Aid.....	104
Liftgate Ajar.....	104
Low Beam Malfunction.....	104
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....	104
Low Tire Pressure Warning.....	104
Low Washer Fluid.....	104
Rear Fog Lamps Indicator.....	104
Shift Indicator.....	105
Speed Limiter.....	105
Stability Control Off Indicator.....	105
Stability Control Warning Lamp.....	105
Traffic Sign Recognition No Passing.....	105
Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Limit.....	105
Water-In-Fuel.....	105
Washer Fluid Check.....	336
Washers See: Wipers and Washers.....	73
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	349
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	376
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	178
What Is Local Hazard Information.....	276
What Is Remote Start.....	126
What Is the Pedestrian Alert System.....	39
What is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	158
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	360
Wheels and Tires.....	350
General Information.....	350
Windows and Mirrors.....	88
Windshield Washers.....	75
Settings.....	75
Windshield Wipers.....	73
Intermittent Wipe.....	73
Winter Tires See: Using Winter Tires.....	356
Wiper Blades See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....	337

# Index

---

Wipers and Washers.....73



